

Fourth edition

# New Headway

Advanced Workbook with key

Liz and John Soars  
Paul Hancock



OXFORD

Fourth edition

New  
**Headway**

**Advanced** Workbook with key

Liz and John Soars  
Paul Hancock

with additional material from  
Sylvia Wheeldon



with

**iChecker**

Assess > Progress

CD-ROM

**OXFORD**  
UNIVERSITY PRESS

# Contents

See **iChecker**

CD-ROM for **AUDIO BANK**, **UNIT TESTS**, and **LINKS**

## UNIT 1 WHAT MAKES US HUMAN?

### Tense review

Check your tenses	4
Correcting mistakes	5
Active or passive? Which sounds better?	5
Reflexive verbs	6

### Reading

Robots versus humans	6
----------------------	---

### Listening

Words of wisdom	8
-----------------	---

### Phrasal verbs

An overview of phrasal verbs	8
------------------------------	---

### Vocabulary

Describing people	9
Idioms of extreme emotion	9

### Pronunciation

Word stress	9
-------------	---

## UNIT 2 IN SO MANY WORDS

### Adverbs and adjectives

Adverb collocations	10
Adverbs with two forms	11

### Reading

Writers talk about their writing	12
----------------------------------	----

### Listening

Literature in the desert	14
--------------------------	----

### Vocabulary

Adjectives with positive and negative meanings	15
Adjective order	15
Adding drama	16

### Prepositions

Adjective + preposition	16
-------------------------	----

### Pronunciation

Sounds and spelling	17
---------------------	----

## UNIT 3 ENOUGH IS ENOUGH?

### Verb patterns

Verbs + gerund or infinitive	18
Verbs + gerund or infinitive with a change of meaning	18
Sentence transformation	19
Neha Gupta, teenage philanthropist	19

### Reading

A president for our times?	20
----------------------------	----

### Vocabulary

Describing trends	22
-------------------	----

### Listening

A family business	23
-------------------	----

### Phrasal verbs

<i>up</i> and <i>down</i>	24
---------------------------	----

### Pronunciation

Losing a syllable	24
-------------------	----

## UNIT 4 NOT ALL IT SEEMS

### Modal auxiliary verbs

Speculating – present and future	25
Speculating – past	25
Modals – other meanings	26
Misleading adverts	26
Set expressions with modals	27

### Reading

Modern day magic	28
------------------	----

### Listening

Euphemisms – in an estate agent's	30
-----------------------------------	----

### Vocabulary

Idiomatic collocations: adjective + noun	31
Onomatopoeic verbs	31

### Pronunciation

Stress and intonation with modal verbs	32
--	----

### Prepositions

Verb + preposition	32
--------------------	----

## UNIT 5 CULTURE CLASHES

### Avoiding repetition

Using auxiliaries	33
Reduced infinitives	34

### Vocabulary

Synonyms in context	35
---------------------	----

### Reading

Two ways of travelling	36
------------------------	----

### Listening

A marriage of two nationalities	38
---------------------------------	----

### Phrasal verbs

Phrasal verbs and their Latin-based synonyms	38
--	----

### Pronunciation

British and American English	39
------------------------------	----

## UNIT 6 FRUITS OF WAR

### Ways of adding emphasis

Structures which add emphasis	40
Negative inversion	41
The use of <i>-ever</i> for emphasis	42

### Reading

Land Girls	42
------------	----

### Listening

Pearl McGuigan – Land Girl	44
----------------------------	----

### Vocabulary

Verbs to nouns	45
----------------	----

### Phrasal nouns

Compound nouns formed with prepositions	45
---	----

### Pronunciation

Adding emphasis with stress	46
-----------------------------	----

UNIT 7 LIGHTEN UP!		UNIT 9 THE SOUND OF MUSIC		UNIT 11 OUR HIGH-TECH WORLD	
<b>Real and unreal tense usage</b>		<b>Discourse markers</b>		<b>Future forms</b>	
Real or hypothetical?	47	Attitude markers	60	Names and uses	75
<i>would</i> or <i>had</i> ?	47	Zach Sobiech	61	Shades of meaning	75
Forming the correct tense	48	A review	62	Other future expressions	76
Mixed conditionals	48	<b>Vocabulary</b>		Future in the past	76
Expressions with <i>if</i>	49	Music vocabulary	62	<b>Listening</b>	
<b>Vocabulary</b>		<b>Pronunciation (1)</b>		The future from the past	77
Synonyms: <i>happy</i> and <i>sad</i>	49	Rhyming words: /eə/ /u:/ /i:/ /əʊ/	63	<b>Reading</b>	
Look on the bright side!	50	Cockney rhyming slang	63	Future technology	78
<b>Reading</b>		<b>Reading</b>		<b>Phrasal verbs</b>	
Why we laugh	50	Mick Jagger	64	Literal and metaphorical meanings	80
<b>Listening</b>		<b>Listening</b>		<b>Vocabulary</b>	
Comedy club	52	Music at work	66	Technology idioms	80
<b>Phrasal verbs</b>		<b>Phrasal verbs</b>		<b>Pronunciation</b>	
<i>on</i> and <i>off</i>	53	Verbs with a particle and a preposition	67	Sounds and spelling – homophones	81
<b>Pronunciation</b>		<b>Pronunciation (2)</b>			
Linking in conditional sentences	53	Stress and intonation	67		
UNIT 8 GENDER MATTERS?		UNIT 10 BODY AND MIND		UNIT 12 TURNING POINTS	
<b>Relative clauses and participles</b>		<b>Distancing the facts</b>		<b>Linking devices</b>	
Defining and non-defining relative clauses	54	Reporting with passive verbs	68	Revision of linkers	82
Expressions of quantity + <i>of</i> + a relative pronoun	54	<i>seem</i> and <i>appear</i>	68	Using contrast linkers	83
Common phrases with relative pronouns	55	Monique Van Der Vorst	69	<b>Revision</b>	
Participle clauses	55	<b>Reading</b>		Finding and correcting mistakes	84
<b>Relative pronouns and participles</b>		Charles Eugster	70	<b>Prepositions</b>	
Gender-neutral pronouns	55	<b>Vocabulary</b>		Prepositions in set phrases	84
<b>Reading</b>		Words to do with the body	71	<b>Vocabulary</b>	
Meet the first female footballers	56	Expressions with parts of the body	72	Expressions with light, weather, and food	85
<b>Listening</b>		<b>Listening</b>		Idioms with <i>like</i>	85
Toy stories	58	The human brain	72	Idioms with <i>as ... as</i>	85
<b>Prepositions</b>		<b>Prepositions</b>		<b>Reading</b>	
Verb + preposition	58	Prepositions in passive sentences	73	The midlife crisis	86
<b>Vocabulary</b>		<b>Pronunciation</b>		<b>Pronunciation</b>	
Opposite adjectives	59	Intonation in question tags	74	Reading aloud: word linking and intrusive sounds	88
<b>Pronunciation</b>				<b>Listening</b>	
Reading aloud: punctuation and the sounds /ʃ/ /tʃ/ and /ʒ/ /dʒ/	59			<i>The Road Not Taken</i>	88
				<b>Tapescripts</b>	90
				<b>Answer key</b>	95
				<b>Phonetic symbols</b>	107
				<b>Notes</b>	108



# 1

Tense review • Reflexive pronouns • Overview of phrasal verbs  
• Describing people • Idioms • Word stress

## What makes us human?

Always remember that you  
are absolutely unique. Just like  
everyone else.

Margaret Mead (1901–1978)  
Anthropologist

On the whole human beings  
want to be good, but not too  
good, and not quite all the time.

George Orwell (1903–1950)  
Author

## Tense review

### 1 Check your tenses

Complete each sentence with a correct form of the verb above, simple or continuous, active or passive, positive or negative.

#### think

- What are you thinking about? You look depressed.
- Sorry, I shouldn't have said that. I \_\_\_\_\_ it would upset you so much.
- Tom, I \_\_\_\_\_ maybe we should move house. What \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_?
- He told me he couldn't give me an answer now. He said he \_\_\_\_\_ about it.

#### see

- Hi, Paula! How are you? I \_\_\_\_\_ you for ages.
- I can't make the meeting tomorrow – I \_\_\_\_\_ the doctor for a check-up.
- \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ that? That guy nearly knocked that girl off her bike!
- The police said the suspect \_\_\_\_\_ trying to board a plane at Birmingham airport.

#### feel

- How \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ about going to live in Australia? Are you still excited about it?
- I'm not sure what's wrong with me. I \_\_\_\_\_ myself recently.
- I'm sorry Mrs Jones, but it \_\_\_\_\_ by the teachers that we have no option but to expel Tom.
- Jack's exam is about to start. I can just imagine how he \_\_\_\_\_.

#### spend

- We \_\_\_\_\_ the whole holiday looking out at this rain. It's miserable.
- How long \_\_\_\_\_ deciding which dress to wear? We have to leave in ten minutes.
- Do you have any idea how much the government \_\_\_\_\_ so far on the new high-speed rail link?
- I just wonder how much \_\_\_\_\_ by the time it's finally finished?

#### find

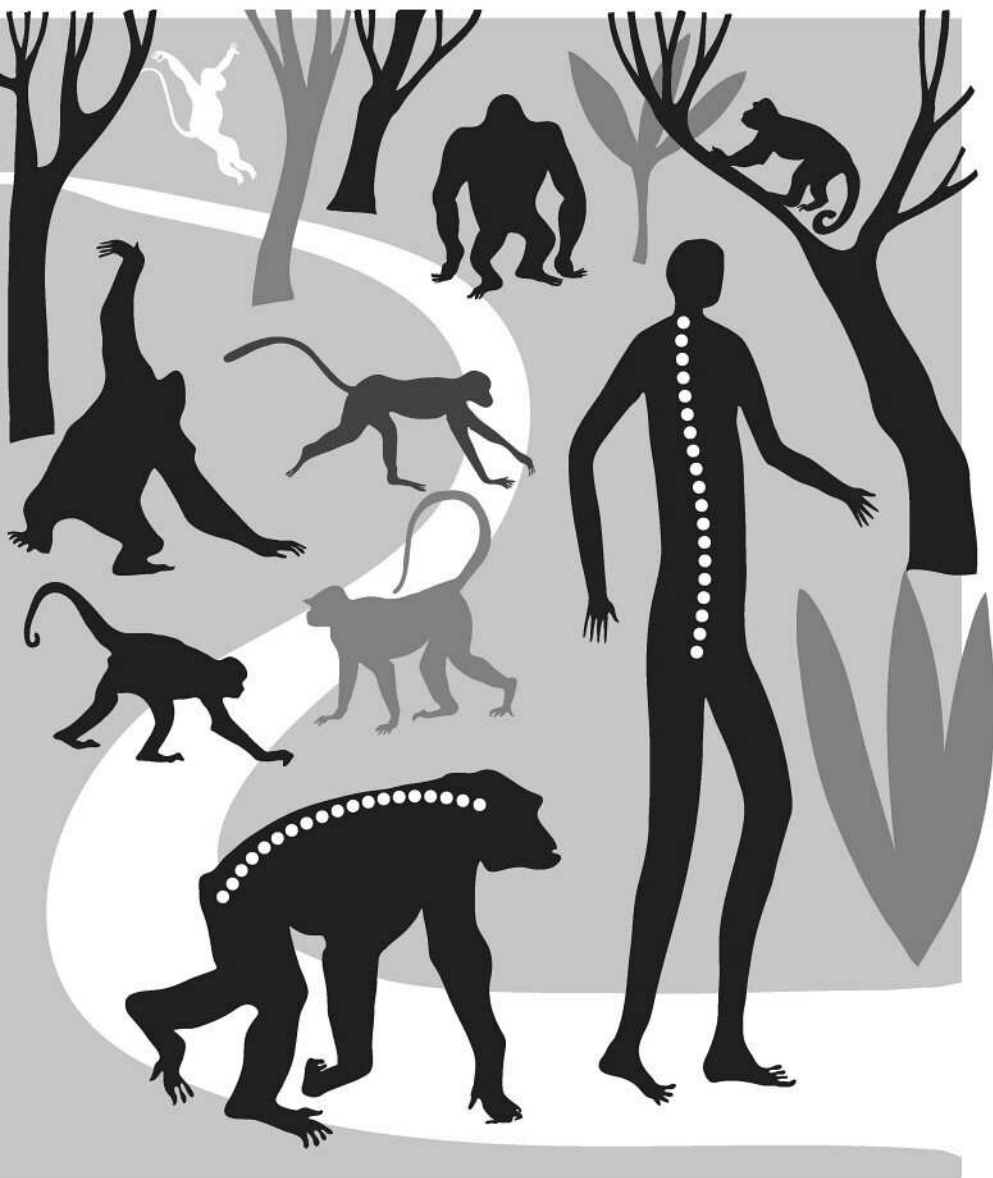
- How \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ the film? Was it as funny as the critics said?
- She told me that she \_\_\_\_\_ it very difficult not to laugh in all the wrong places.
- He \_\_\_\_\_ to have lied time and time again to the police.
- I think you \_\_\_\_\_ that it's too hot for you in Dubai in August.

#### say

- Well, as I \_\_\_\_\_ when I was so rudely interrupted, I think you're mistaken.
- It \_\_\_\_\_ that no one will ever know the truth about what happened.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ it again, just as I \_\_\_\_\_ it many times before, you're not going to an all-night party.
- There's something \_\_\_\_\_ for answering your emails immediately.

## 2 Correcting mistakes

There is *one* mistake in each of the sentences below.  
Find it and correct it.



- 1 Humans are unique among primates in that they are walking upright.
- 2 It's great to hear from you, Jill. What have you been doing since I've last seen you?
- 3 I hated school. Perhaps I'd have liked it if I was more popular.
- 4 Why haven't you told me that you don't like fruit cake?
- 5 I was going to go to the theatre last night but then I heard that the performance will be cancelled.
- 6 The forecast said unsettled, so take your umbrella in case it's raining.
- 7 His mother was putting him to bed early because he was being naughty.
- 8 I won't make your party I'm afraid – I'll visit my grandmother in Scotland.
- 9 If you're seeing Jane at the weekend, are you inviting her to my party, please?
- 10 He wasn't thinking of celebrating his retirement but he's now deciding it's a good idea.

## 3 Active or passive? Which sounds better?

The **passive** is used when:

- the subject is unknown.  
*No one knows when music **was invented**.*  
*My phone's **been stolen**!*
- we want to focus on the object of the sentence rather than the subject.  
*Calls and songs **are used** by birds to communicate.*  
*'Hamlet' **was written** by Shakespeare between 1599 and 1601.*
- we want to sound more impersonal and distance ourselves from the facts.  
*500 workers **will have to be made** redundant.*  
*(We'll have to make 500 workers redundant.)*

Most of the sentences below (but not all) would sound better in the passive. Decide which ones and rewrite them.

- 1 Someone built this bridge in 1897.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 2 A secretary has invited my grandfather to a garden party at Buckingham Palace.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 The invention of fire gave humans the ability to cook.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Nobody must take reference books from the library.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Alexander Graham Bell was a scientist. He invented the telephone in 1876.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 6 They say a Bulgarian scientist has discovered a drug which prevents ageing.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 7 Someone wants you in reception immediately. They'll tell you what it's about.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 8 An avalanche buried eight people in Austria.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 9 People know him to be a very good judge of character.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 10 The police have finally recaptured the violent robber who has been on the run for a week.  
\_\_\_\_\_

## 4 Reflexive verbs

Complete the sentences with the correct verb from the box and a reflexive pronoun.

apply	behave	busy	content
fancy	help	kick	dress

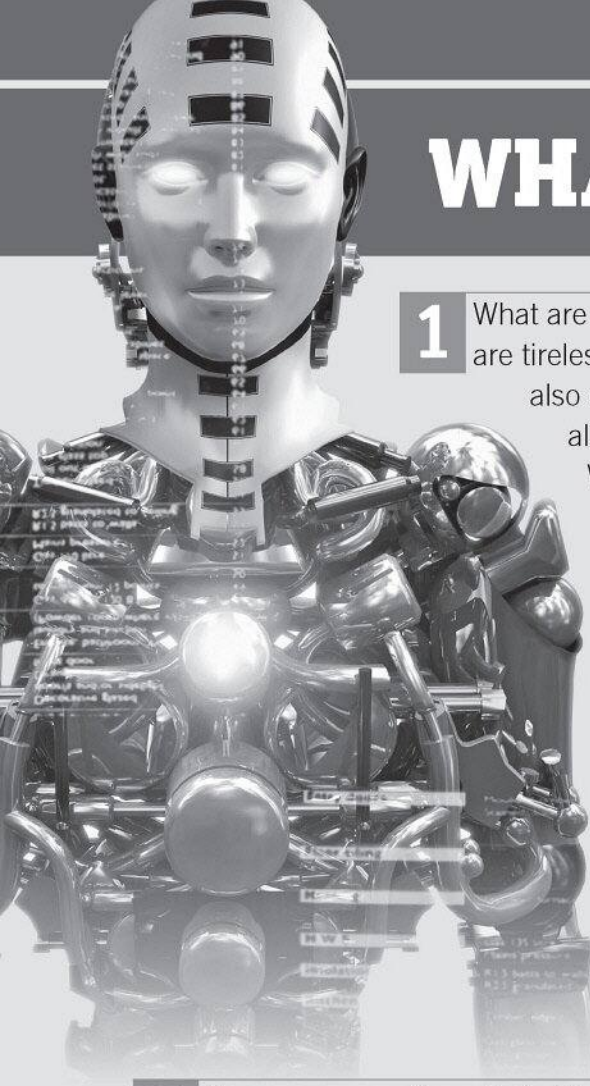


- 1 After the accident he couldn't dress himself for a while.
- 2 Kids, you must \_\_\_\_\_ when we go into the museum.
- 3 If you'd like another sandwich, please just \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 She \_\_\_\_\_ to the task of reaching the top of the career ladder at her firm.
- 5 We thought we had a chance of winning that rowing race but unfortunately we had to \_\_\_\_\_ with second place.
- 6 They \_\_\_\_\_ in the kitchen with preparations for the party.
- 7 She \_\_\_\_\_ as a world famous film star and fashion icon but she's not actually a very good actress.
- 8 I didn't pluck up the courage to ask her out on a date. Silly me! I could \_\_\_\_\_ !

## Reading

### 5 Robots versus humans

- 1 Read and listen to the article about the latest robot experiments. Choose the best summary of the text.
  - a Robots will one day be superior to humans.
  - b Humans have started to create robots that are more like humans.
  - c Robots are now developing human emotions.
  - d Robots are particularly good at competing with humans in the arts.
- 2 Read the text again. Answer the questions.
  - 1 According to the writer, why did humans invent robots?
  - 2 Who or what is Emily Howell?
  - 3 What does EMI stand for? Why did it anger composers?
  - 4 How does the software program 'The Painting Fool' choose its mood?
  - 5 Who is Simon Colton? What does he want?
  - 6 Has Adam won the Nobel Prize? Who is Eve?
  - 7 Why does the writer say we are fascinated by robots?
- 3 Read these statements. There is one for each paragraph. Replace the words in *italics> with how they are expressed in the text.
  - 1 Humans *readily acknowledge* \_\_\_\_\_ that robots *function* \_\_\_\_\_ better in some areas than they do.
  - 2 Emily Howell *launched herself onto* \_\_\_\_\_ the music scene. Her only *failing* \_\_\_\_\_ was that she was a computer.
  - 3 Professor David Cope *supplied unprocessed facts and figures to* \_\_\_\_\_ the computer about composers in history.
  - 4 Emily Howell's music is *modern* \_\_\_\_\_ and *causes arguments* \_\_\_\_\_ because she is competing against humans.
  - 5 'The Painting Fool' software program *refuses to* \_\_\_\_\_ paint if it is *feeling fed up* \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 6 Computer creativity is not just *limited* \_\_\_\_\_ to the arts. Scientists have *worked together* \_\_\_\_\_ and created Adam, the world's first computer scientist.
  - 7 What will happen if the robot experiment gets *out of control* \_\_\_\_\_ ? Can scientists *close down* \_\_\_\_\_ these machines?*



# WHAT MAKES A ROBOT HUMAN?

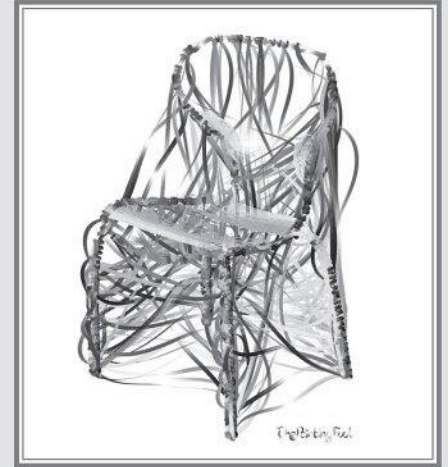
**1** What are the traits of a robot? Robots are tireless, reliable, unemotional, and also unquestioning. That is, after all, how they are programmed. We invented robots and computers to be our faithful servants, to do the things that we couldn't or didn't want to do ourselves. In so many areas robots perform better than humans, and we accept this with good grace because they are only robots and we are the superior ones. The one thing they can't do is be human. They can't feel, emote, create, or love.

**2** However, our notion of what it is to be a human versus a robot is currently being challenged by the latest experiments in computer programming. Take, for instance, the area of creativity. A little while ago, a new and exciting composer called **Emily Howell** broke onto the music scene. Her music was original, beautiful, and contemporary and two albums were released. Emily's only flaw? She was someone's computer.

**3** The human responsible for Emily, American professor David Cope, has worked on robot creativity for many years. He had originally attempted to code a computer program which wrote music. The results were predictably terrible. So he gave up writing rules for the computer and instead just fed raw data into it for the computer to analyse itself. Cope eventually produced a computer that could analyse any composer in history and then write an entirely new work that sounded just like how that composer would have written it himself. He called it EMI – Experiments in Musical Intelligence.

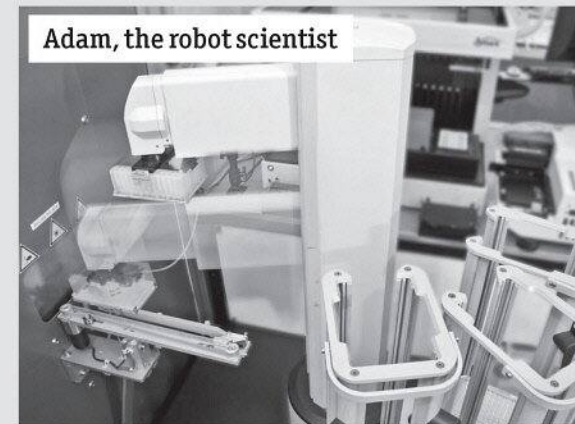
**4** Composers were outraged, and musicians refused to perform EMI's works. Undaunted, Cope tried a less controversial approach. He formed a new database of only the new work that EMI had created. This he fed into his new computer program, Emily Howell, and from that point she began working on her own musical style. What is interesting is that her music is contemporary. Like other modern composers, she has learned from the past to create music for our time. Emily is unfortunately even more controversial, as she is now competing with humans in their own creative field.

**5** It is not only in the world of music that computers are making creative waves. Similarly, the art world is coming to terms with a program called '**The Painting Fool**' – a laptop software program which has learned how different artistic styles and colours can represent moods and emotions. Again, the program absorbed many years of art history and, like Emily Howell, came up with its own contemporary style. The computer first reads the newspaper in order to set its 'mood' for the day. Then it chooses an adjective to reflect that mood, and does a portrait of a real person with that adjective in mind. After that, it looks at its own work to see if it has achieved the objectives it set out for itself, and if it thinks the work isn't good enough, it tries again. And sometimes, if it's in a very bad mood, it won't paint at all! Because the program operates in different 'moods' and has the ability to analyse its own abilities as a human might, co-creator Simon Colton wants it to be recognized as an artist in its own right.



**6** Computer creativity is not just confined to the arts, however. British scientists have collaborated on a big project to come up with a laboratory machine that can think for itself.

**Adam** is the world's first robot scientist. Adam acts in the same way as a human scientist: he comes up with a hypothesis, he devises experiments to test this hypothesis, conducts his experiments, analyses the findings, and then retests accordingly – all without the need for human intervention. Although not yet a Nobel Prize winner, Adam has already produced some original research into genetics. The same scientists are now developing another robot called Eve, and she will be twice as clever!




Adam, the robot scientist

**7** So are these robots becoming like us? Part of our fascination with robots is that it makes us actually question what it means to be human. And ultimately, we are their creators. If the whole experiment gets out of hand, we can just pull the plug on these machines, can't we? Unless – as in scary science fiction movies – our robots decide that they no longer need us ...


# Listening

## 6 Words of wisdom

- 1  Listen to people talking about good advice they have been given in their lives. Write in the table who the advice was from.



Name	Who did it come from?	The advice
1 Elaine		There are only three things in life that are important: _____.
2 Sue		Love many, trust a few, always _____.
3 Simon		Always _____ especially with _____ and love.
4 Lizzie		You should allow your friends _____.
5 Justin		Never _____ if you _____.
6 Fiona		This too _____.
7 Chris		The letters are _____ which stand for _____.
8 Martyn		Dust it _____ essentially just means 'don't _____, just do it.'

- 2  Listen again and complete the advice.
- 3 Who could have said the following? Write in the name.
- I think it must be an American expression. Martyn
  - I say this to myself in both good times and bad times but particularly when something's getting me down. \_\_\_\_\_
  - I still get on really well with him. Mind you, his new wife's a bit of a pain. \_\_\_\_\_
  - My family and home mean everything to me. \_\_\_\_\_
  - I didn't understand what it meant until recently – I think it means 'trust your own judgement'. \_\_\_\_\_
  - My grandfather gets really irritated when she says it to him. \_\_\_\_\_
  - I threw out a whole pack of yoghurt the other day. \_\_\_\_\_
  - There are photos of her dancing in long floaty garments – she looks stunning. \_\_\_\_\_

# Phrasal verbs

## 7 An overview of phrasal verbs

A phrasal verb is a **verb + particle (an adverb or a preposition)**.

They can be literal or idiomatic, separable or inseparable.

### Type 1: Verb + adverb

There is no object (intransitive).

*He walked in and sat down.*

*What time did John finally turn up?*

### Type 2: Verb + adverb + object (transitive)

The adverb can be separable but *not* if the object is a pronoun.

*Please, hand out the books/hand the books out/hand them out.*

*We put off the meeting/put the meeting off/put it off.*

### Type 3: Verb + preposition + object (transitive)

The preposition is *inseparable*.

*He ran after the dog/ran after it.*

*They took to their new teacher/took to her immediately.*

### Type 4: Verb + adverb + preposition + object (transitive)

The adverb and preposition are *inseparable*.

*Henry went out with Kate for six years.*

*Kate broke up with him last week.*

Read these sentences and decide if the phrasal verbs are used correctly. Correct the mistakes.

- My brother loves going to the gym. He works daily out.
- I really liked Sue's sister. I took her to straightaway.
- We ended up putting his friends up for the whole weekend.
- I tried ringing several times yesterday, but I couldn't get to you through.
- I don't speak Spanish at all well. I thought I'd easily pick up it living in Madrid but I didn't.
- He was lucky to get away with just a fine for such dangerous driving.
- They're not going on holiday. They fell through their plans.
- We contacted the company about the delay and they are looking it into.
- I think she has a weak immune system. She's always coming down with something or other.
- Do you think they'll ever stop travelling and settle together down?

# Vocabulary

## 8 Describing people

Choose the *two* adjectives that can best complete each sentence.

- snobbish smug conceited*  
He never shuts up about himself. He's smug/conceited and arrogant.
- supportive incompetent encouraging*  
My co-workers were really \_\_\_\_\_ when I started my new job. I was so grateful for their help.
- bubbly determined energetic*  
She's such a/an \_\_\_\_\_ character and great company. She cheers me up.
- patronizing condescending indifferent*  
He's so \_\_\_\_\_ – he always makes me feel silly and self-conscious.
- outraged undaunted indignant*  
Rose was \_\_\_\_\_ about his comments on her work. She found him unnecessarily rude.
- offended distraught anxious*  
I was really \_\_\_\_\_ when Sarah said that. She's forever hurting my feelings.

## 9 Idioms of extreme emotion

Replace the words in *italics* with an idiom from the box. Change the form where necessary.

totally lose it    be beside yourself    be completely blown away  
be absolutely gutted    be bored rigid    be thrilled to bits  
make such a fuss

- I had flu and I couldn't get to my best friend's birthday party! I *was terribly disappointed* \_\_\_\_\_.
- I *was overwhelmed* \_\_\_\_\_ by his performance. I never knew he could sing like that!
- They *were distraught* \_\_\_\_\_ with grief when their dog died.
- I tried to watch the documentary about Ancient Greece but I *wasn't remotely interested in it* \_\_\_\_\_.
- Guess what? Remember that job I applied for? I got it! I'm *absolutely delighted* \_\_\_\_\_.
- Look, you only spilt a little bit on your suit. And it's only water. Stop *complaining – it's nothing* \_\_\_\_\_.
- He was so late we missed the movie. And not for the first time! I *exploded with anger* \_\_\_\_\_.

# Pronunciation

## 10 Word stress

- 🔊 Look at the pairs of words in phonetic script. Notice the stress marks and read them aloud. Transcribe them, then listen and check.

### ▶▶ Phonetic symbols p107

1	/ˈɒrɪdʒɪnz/	<u>origins</u>
	/ərɪˈdʒɪnəl/	_____
2	/kjuəriˈɒsəti:/	_____
	/ˈkjuəriəs/	_____
3	/ˈenədʒi:/	_____
	/enəˈdʒetɪk/	_____
4	/kəˈlæbəreɪt/	_____
	/kəlæbəˈreɪʃən/	_____
5	/ˈɪnflʊəns/	_____
	/ɪnflʊˈenʃəl/	_____

- 🔊 Listen and write the words in the correct column according to the stress.

ancestors	distraught	controversial	embarrassment
evolution	generation	gratitude	incompetent
indignant	inhabit	interrupt	insomnia
naked	offended	outraged	patronizing
reproduce	success	ultimately	upright

●●	●●	●●●	●●●
		ancestors	
●●●	●●●●	●●●●	●●●●



# 2

- Adverbs and adjectives • Adjective order • Adding drama
- Adjective + preposition • Sounds and spelling

## In so many words

All the words I use in my stories can be found in the dictionary – it's just a matter of arranging them in the right sentences.

**Somerset Maugham** (1874–1965)  
Novelist and short story writer

The only end of writing is to enable the readers better to enjoy life or better to endure it.

**Samuel Johnson** (1709–1784)  
Author of the first English dictionary

## Adverbs and adjectives

### 1 Adverb collocations

- 1 Match the adverbs with the adjectives and verbs.

Adverbs	Adjectives
1 bitterly	a unlikely
2 highly	b clear
3 perfectly	c disappointed
4 sorely	d impossible
5 virtually	e tempted

Adverbs	Verbs
6 deeply	f hope
7 distinctly	g regret
8 eagerly	h await
9 fully	i remember
10 sincerely	j understand

- 2 Read the emails between a publisher and a prospective author. Complete them with suitable adverb collocations from exercise 1.

**To: Mr Madsen**

Dear Mr Madsen,  
Please find attached the manuscript of my first novel entitled *Deep Space 17*.  
I <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ that you find it as exciting to read as I found it to write. As you are the foremost fiction publishers in the country, I am anxious to hear your opinion as soon as possible, although I <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ that you may take up to six weeks to respond. However, I am so confident of my novel's appeal that I think you will find it <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ to turn down!  
I <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ your speedy reply.

Yours sincerely,  
N.R. Fielding

**To: Mr Fielding**

Dear Mr Fielding,  
Thank you for your manuscript. I'm afraid it is <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ that your novel would ever be considered for publication by any publisher. Unfortunately, your work is not remotely original. In fact, I <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ watching a Hollywood blockbuster with exactly the same storyline.

Yours sincerely,  
A Madsen

**MADSEN PUBLISHING**

**To: Mr Madsen**

Dear Mr Madsen,  
I must confess that I was <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ at first when I received your reply. However, it is now <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ to me that your company is unable to appreciate rare new talent such as mine. I am <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ to complain in the press about this poor treatment. I have no doubt that you will <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ your decision when my novel is a great success.

Yours sincerely,  
Neil Fielding

- 3 One adverb collocates with each verb. Choose the correct one.



Ladies and gentlemen, I am <sup>1</sup>*absolutely / strongly / fully* delighted to accept this prestigious award. To be honest, I <sup>2</sup>*completely / distinctly / perfectly* forgot to plan an acceptance speech, as I wasn't <sup>3</sup>*deeply / sorely / entirely* convinced that I had any chance of winning. It's been a long road, and looking back, I can see it was <sup>4</sup>*wildly / fully / fatally* optimistic of me to think that my first novel would be quick and easy to write. Five years later, I can <sup>5</sup>*perfectly / eagerly / safely* say that it took a lot longer than I expected. However, I was <sup>6</sup>*perfectly / virtually / blindingly* happy spending day after day alone in my study writing, and I <sup>7</sup>*strongly / severely / completely* recommend that everyone has a go at writing their own novel. I now <sup>8</sup>*freely / fully / strongly* intend to write a sequel – but hopefully a bit more quickly! I <sup>9</sup>*highly / greatly / firmly* believe that creative work is its own reward, but I must say that I <sup>10</sup>*highly / greatly / entirely* appreciate being given an award as well. Thank you.

Listen and check.

## 2 Adverbs with two forms

Mike is a journalist. Complete the conversation between him and his wife, Jo, with the correct adverb from the box. Then listen and check.


sure/surely	easy/easily	right/rightly
hard/hardly	late/lately	

- Jo** It's nearly midnight! Why are you working so <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ again?
- Mike** Oh no, is that the time? I'm not finding it <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ to finish this article. And the deadline for the paper is midnight.
- Jo** It's always the same. Work's taken over your life. You've <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ spent any time with me or the children <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ !
- Mike** You're <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. I'm really sorry. But you know our paper is under pressure at the moment. I'm grateful not to have been made redundant like so many others.
- Jo** I know. But it means you have to work twice as <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ these days. <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ your newspaper bosses can see that it isn't good for any of its employees?
- Mike** The paper quite <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ thinks that it will be much worse for its employees if more of us are out of work!
- Jo** Is it as bad as that? But Mike, you're such a good writer, I think you'll <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ find another job.
- Mike** Well, I'm not so <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ about that.



## Reading

### 3 Writers talk about their writing

- 1  Read and listen to what some famous contemporary British authors say about writing and what it means to them. Are these sentences true (✓) or false (✗)? Correct the false ones.

- 1 **Beryl Bainbridge** says her books reflect her own life, apart from the violent ends.
- 2 **Ian Rankin's** parents were proud when he decided to follow in his aunt's footsteps and become an accountant.
- 3 **Penelope Lively** was never encouraged to be a writer as a child.
- 4 **Michael Morpurgo** began his writing career by writing jokes for his school friends.
- 5 **Wendy Cope** believes that to be a poet you have to experience life more deeply than other people.
- 6 **P.D. James** plans her novels carefully before she starts writing.
- 7 **Michael Holroyd** tears up a day's writing if he thinks it isn't any good.

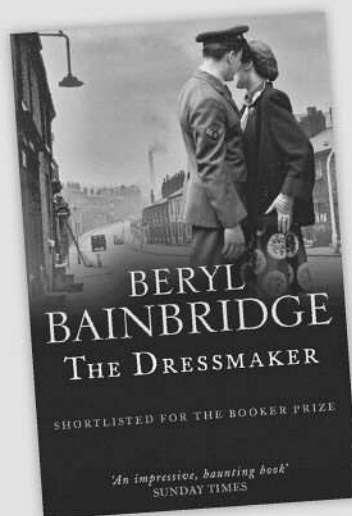
- 2 Which writer is being talked about? How do you know? Write the names.

- 1 '\_\_\_\_\_ gets great enjoyment from researching famous lives.'
- 2 '\_\_\_\_\_ was amazed when she made the nurse the culprit in the end.'
- 3 'One of \_\_\_\_\_'s best just took a morning to write.'
- 4 '\_\_\_\_\_ loves seeing kids' faces when the books are read aloud.'
- 5 '\_\_\_\_\_ has had advice from many famous authors since then, but none have been a greater influence.'
- 6 '\_\_\_\_\_ has never regretted taking the risk and following his dream.'
- 7 'Anyone who knows \_\_\_\_\_'s background can see that the books are mainly autobiographical.'

# Writers on writing

## 1 **Beryl Bainbridge, 1932-2010,** English novelist, from Liverpool

'When I write a novel I'm writing about my own life; I'm writing a biography almost always. And to make it look like a novel I either have a murder or a death at the end.'



- 3 Which author is being referred to in these sentences? Write the author's name and replace the words in *italics* with a highlighted word or phrase from their texts.

- 1 *He* had a sudden realization that he was studying totally the wrong subjects. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 *She* believes that you don't need a reason or an *underlying motive* to write. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 For years *he* failed to realize that creative writing is often *generated* by real life. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 *She* can't recall exactly when she first had the *ambition* to become a writer. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 *His* aunt's husband seemed to have a very good *quality of life*. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 *He* rereads his work and if the ideas don't *fall apart* it's been a good day's writing. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 When new clever ideas occur while *she* is writing she embraces them with *great gusto*. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 Sometimes what *she* writes sounds *flat and unexciting*. \_\_\_\_\_

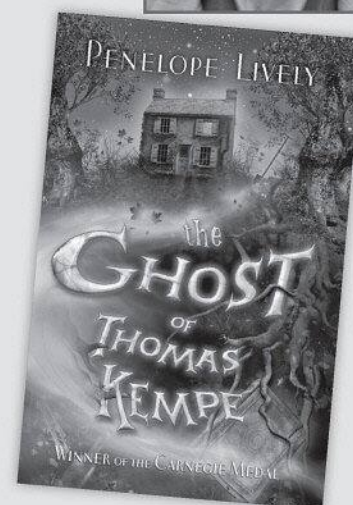
## 2 Ian Rankin, 1960–, Scottish crime writer

'It wasn't the thing my parents wanted me to be good at, but if you're working class and your parents have never owned their own house and never owned a car and stuff; they think you go to university to get a trade, to get a profession. So, accountant, lawyer, dentist, doctor. There was one relative, an aunt of mine who had grown up with my mum in Bradford; she was married to an accountant, and he had a nice flash car; they owned their own home, seemed to have a very good standard of living, so I thought, "Well, I'll become an accountant." So by the age of sort of 15 or 16, that's what I thought I was going to do, and I was doing economics and accounts ... and then there was this sort of epiphany. I was 17, I'd just sat my highers and I'd scraped a C for economics – just passed economics – and I thought, "Why the hell am I going to university to do a subject I'm really not that interested in and obviously not that good at? The thing I really like is English; I like books." I knew very few professional writers who made a living out of their writing, so there at university I was thinking, "Oh, I'm going to have to become a teacher, or hopefully an English lecturer, and I will continue to write as a hobby part-time; in the margins of my life I'll be a writer."



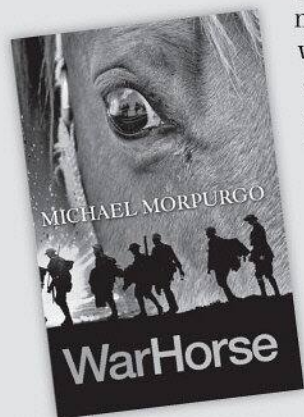
## 3 Penelope Lively, 1933–, novelist, and writer of children's fiction

'When I was about 11 or 12 I think I must have said something about how I wanted to be a writer; I don't remember having any such aspiration until much, much later. But I must have said something, because Lucy [my governess] wrote to Somerset Maugham and said that she was governess to a little girl who wanted to be a writer and what would Mr Maugham suggest? Heaven knows how she managed to write to him – I suppose care of the publishers. He wrote a very nice letter back saying absolutely the right thing: "If your little girl is interested in writing then the best thing she can do is read a lot." Perfect answer; exactly what I'd say myself.'



## 4 Michael Morpurgo, 1943–, award-winning author of children's books

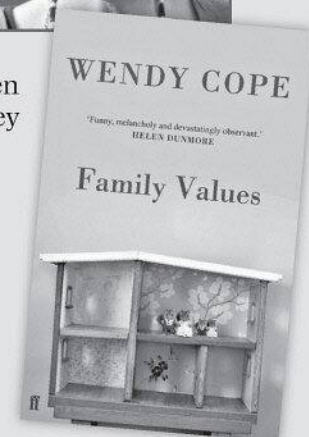
'One of the things that frightened me about writing when I was a small boy is that I had no ideas and no imagination. I was constantly being told this anyway, and I couldn't write very well. I could joke around like other boys,



but on paper I had nothing really serious to add, no adventures I wanted to write down, because I didn't – I just didn't link the two up. I think I learnt at some point that the imagination is not something that you either have or don't have. For me – and we're all different – it's triggered by real people, historical events, memories, by reality of some sort. I don't think in my life I've ever written a story which does not have some little root, some little seed of truth or observation.'

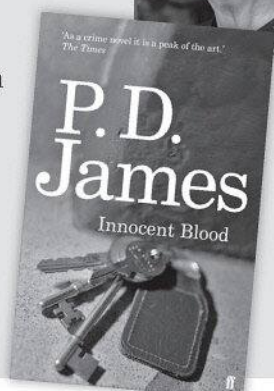
## 5 Wendy Cope, 1945–, contemporary English poet

'You've got to have something to say, but you don't always know what it is. It's often just some words in your head that you think could be a line of a poem, so you write them down and see where it goes. One of the major misconceptions about poetry is that the poet has some kind of agenda and intentions, not just that some words come into their head and then they start playing with them and seeing where they go. Because sometimes I will try to write a poem and it just comes out dead because there isn't really anything that's deeply felt or worth saying. One thing that makes poems work is strong emotion, and I remember hearing James Berry, I think it was, saying that one characteristic of a good poet is that they feel things intensely, and he said: "Of course poets are not the only people who feel things intensely, but it is one of the qualities," and I think that's true.'



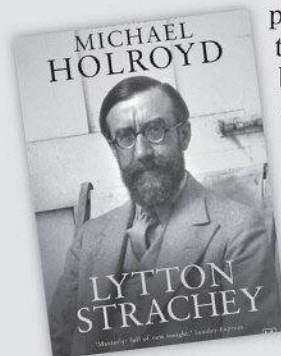
## 6 P.D. James, 1920–2014, English writer of detective novels

'By the time I begin writing, the plot is there and there's a chart which shows in which order the things come so that the structure is right. But that will change, as new ideas occur during the writing, which makes the writing very exciting. New ideas: sometimes one greets them with huge enthusiasm and thinks, "Oh, that's really clever, yes, this is how it happened and this is logical and right and that will be how it will be." So I never get exactly the book that I thought I was going to write.'



## 7 Michael Holroyd, 1935–, biographer

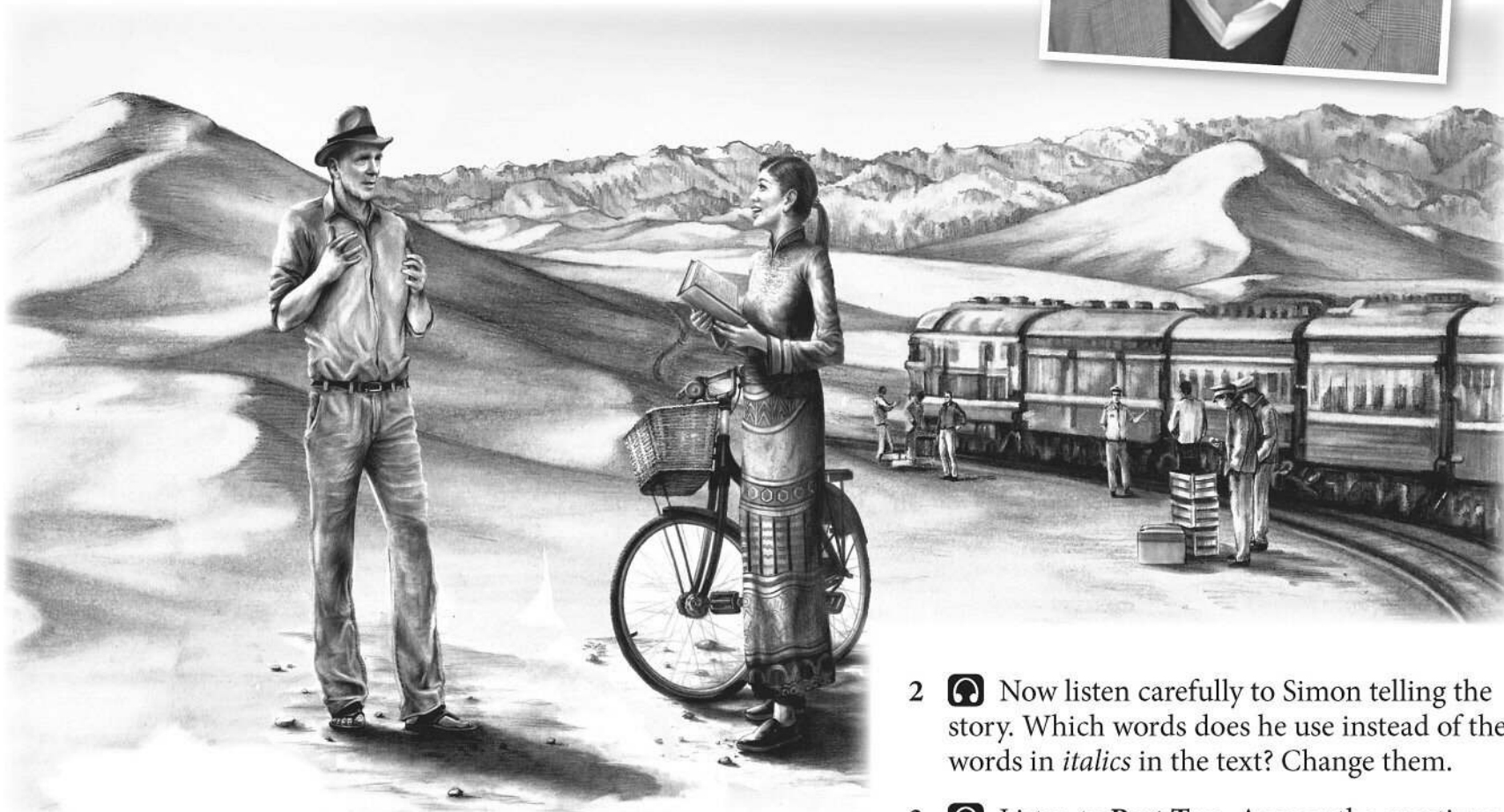
'The only happiness one gets from writing is doing a good day's work, of suddenly discovering something on the page which works. You pick up the page, you shake it, it's there, it doesn't come to bits, and you didn't know it at the beginning of the day and now you know it. Now that's a real happiness, and unless there is some element of that, well why on earth is one writing? Because otherwise moving a pen across the page is not all that enjoyable.'



# Listening

## 4 Literature in the desert

- 1 You are going to hear a story from BBC news correspondent, Simon Winchester, about a strange meeting in the desert. Look at the illustration and read **Part One** of the story. Where does it take place? Who are the four people mentioned?



## Simon's desert encounter

### Part One

Yes, that was a wonderful story. I was ... there was a new railway line *built* across far western China, from a place called Urunchi, through a *valley* called the Zungarian Gate ... into what is now Kazakhstan ... and I thought it would be *a good idea* to ride on one of the first trains. Of course it's a *totally isolated* part of the world. So I go with a friend of mine called George Robertson, and the two of us go out from Urunchi, crossing the desert and now we're about 150 miles west of Urunchi and it's just *wilderness*. And then suddenly the train stops and I look out and there's this 'halt'. I mean, it's not a station, there's no town, there's just a sort of *water tank*, and so I said to the conductor, "Why have we stopped?", and he said, "Oh, we're taking on water" or something like that "and we'll be stopped for half an hour." So I get out and *take a walk* in the *baking* sun and sand dunes, camels, until I go and talk to the engine driver and while I'm doing so, I hear a voice from the si ... behind me, saying in *practically perfect* English: "Excuse me, do you speak English?" And I turn round and there is this vision of *beauty*, this *gorgeous* Chinese woman and I said, "Yes, I do actually", and she said, "Good!" in a very sort of matter-of-fact *rather serious* way.

- 2 Now listen carefully to Simon telling the story. Which words does he use instead of the words in *italics* in the text? Change them.
- 3 Listen to **Part Two**. Answer the questions.
- 1 Why did the lady check her watch?
  - 2 What is the first question she asks Simon? Why does it surprise him?
  - 3 How is Anthony Trollope's book *The Eustace Diamonds* involved in the story?
  - 4 Who 'struggled' and 'scribbled'? Why?
  - 5 Who 'scrabbled'? Why?
  - 6 Why did the lady say 'Don't be silly!'?
- 4 Listen to **Part Three**. Are these statements true (✓) or false (X)? Correct the false ones.
- 1 She and her husband had to move to Kwi Tun as a punishment.
  - 2 She regularly cycles 13 miles across the desert to meet the train.
  - 3 Her main motivation is to find someone to talk to in English.
  - 4 Until Simon, there had been no English speakers on that train journey.
  - 5 She and Simon have now lost touch with each other.

# Vocabulary

## 5 Adjectives with positive and negative meanings

- 1 These pairs of adjectives have similar meanings, but one has positive associations, the other negative. Write them in the correct column. Use your dictionary to help you.

famous/notorious	self-confident/cocky	
firm/authoritarian	tactless/frank	frugal/stingy
aggressive/assertive	long-winded/eloquent	

Positive	Negative

- 2 These conversations all describe people. Complete them using adjectives from exercise 1.

- A Great Aunt Dolly may be a millionaire, but she's so \_\_\_\_\_ with her money.

B Ah, but she says that she's just being \_\_\_\_\_, saving for her old age.
- A Harry can be so \_\_\_\_\_ sometimes, he really hurt my feelings.

B I know, but he doesn't mean it – he just thinks he's being honest and \_\_\_\_\_.
- A I wish I was as \_\_\_\_\_ as Guy. Look at him chatting up that girl at the bar!

B Huh! He's far too \_\_\_\_\_ for my liking. He'll be full of it later.
- A Professor Barnes is a brilliant speaker, isn't he? He's always so clear and \_\_\_\_\_.

B Yes, his lectures are great – not like Prof. Fox. He's so \_\_\_\_\_, he never gets to the point.
- A Who's Al Capone? Why is he \_\_\_\_\_?

B Surely you've heard of Al Capone. He was a \_\_\_\_\_ American gangster and bootlegger in the 1920s. He spent 11 years in Alcatraz.
- A Dave becomes really \_\_\_\_\_ if he thinks he's losing an argument.

B He needs to learn not to lose his temper and just be more \_\_\_\_\_.
- A It's difficult being a parent. You have to be \_\_\_\_\_ with your children but then ...

B Don't I know ... if you're too strict with them, you're accused of being an \_\_\_\_\_ father.

## 6 Adjective order

Read the travel blog of a visitor to Japan. Correct the order of the adjectives in any examples that don't sound natural.

### Wednesday, August 10th

#### > Day 10 of my travels in Japan: KYOTO

Today was extremely hot and humid. This morning I left the hotel at ten and ventured into <sup>1</sup> *downtown, crowded, noisy Kyoto*. I headed for **Shisen-do**, a temple that a friend of mine said I shouldn't miss. Although I was wearing <sup>2</sup> *light, cotton* clothing, I was already sweating after twenty minutes. So when I reached the temple and walked in I was struck by the <sup>3</sup> *dark, cool, peaceful* interior.

Shisen-do is a <sup>4</sup> *wooden, beautiful, old* temple built with great simplicity and grace, surrounded by <sup>5</sup> *tall, ancient*, maple trees and overlooking a <sup>6</sup> *deep, large* pond with moss-covered rocks. There is always the sound of running water in Japanese temples, and to the left of the pond was a fountain with a <sup>7</sup> *bamboo, black, long* tube which tipped backwards when it was full of water, making a <sup>8</sup> *soft knocking* sound on the stone beneath.

While I was sitting cross-legged on the tatami mat, looking out at the garden, I got into conversation with a(n) <sup>9</sup> *young interesting* man wearing a <sup>10</sup> *cotton, pale blue* robe. He told me he came there to meditate every day. I could see why. When I left, I experienced an incredible sense of calm and well-being, and as I sat having a <sup>11</sup> *cold, long* drink in a <sup>12</sup> *lovely little* café not far away, I realized I hadn't felt like that in a very long time.



## 7 Adding drama

Read this romantic, historical drama. Replace the words in *italics* with a more dramatic word or phrase below. Put the verbs in the correct form.

Verbs	Adjectives	Adverbs
catch sight of march demand to know droop swing back swing round cascade account for refuse	turquoise crimson resplendent forlorn massive ornate	desperately momentarily all at once
		Nouns
		gown fury

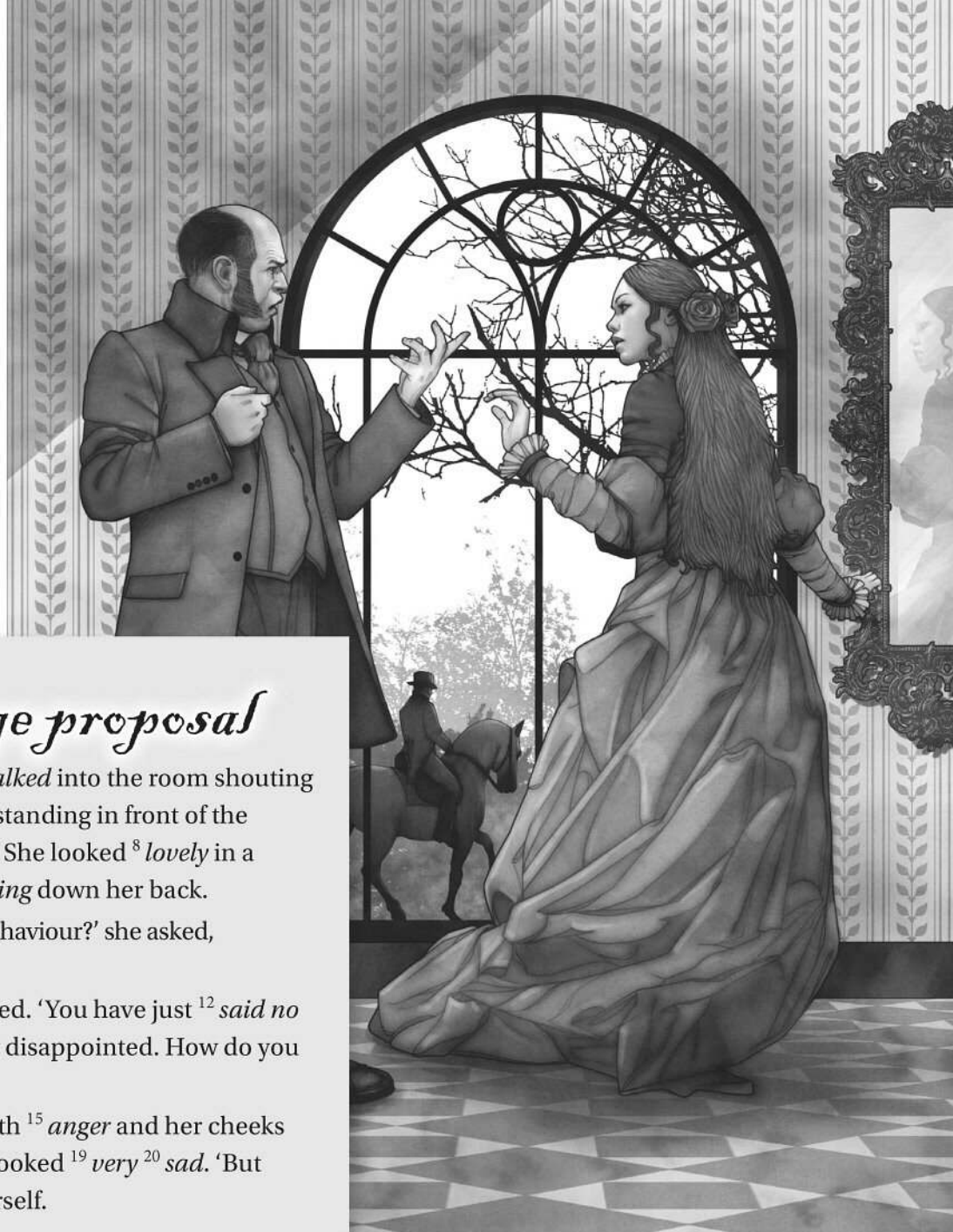
### *Honoria and the marriage proposal*

The <sup>1</sup> *big* mahogany doors <sup>2</sup> *opened* and the count <sup>3</sup> *walked* into the room shouting loudly and <sup>4</sup> *asking* where Honoria was. He <sup>5</sup> *saw* her standing in front of the <sup>6</sup> *decorative* gold mirror and was <sup>7</sup> *briefly* taken aback. She looked <sup>8</sup> *lovely* in a <sup>9</sup> *greeny-blue* silk <sup>10</sup> *dress* with her chestnut curls <sup>11</sup> *falling* down her back.

'My Lord, what is the meaning of this ungentlemanly behaviour?' she asked, indignantly.

'Honoria, it is you who must answer to me!' he snapped. 'You have just <sup>12</sup> *said no* to Lord Ambrose's marriage proposal. I am extremely disappointed. How do you <sup>13</sup> *explain* your actions?'

She <sup>14</sup> *turned around* to face him, her eyes flashing with <sup>15</sup> *anger* and her cheeks <sup>16</sup> *red*. Then <sup>17</sup> *suddenly*, her shoulders <sup>18</sup> *fell* and she looked <sup>19</sup> *very* <sup>20</sup> *sad*. 'But Uncle, I do not love him,' she mumbled, almost to herself.



## Prepositions

### 8 Adjective + preposition


Match the phrases in **A** and **B** and then join them with a preposition in the box.

about for (x2) from of (x2) on (x2) to (x2) with (x2)

A	B
1 The film is based _____ 2 John has always been envious _____ 3 It may be old and shabby, but I'm very attached _____ 4 He seems emotionally detached _____ 5 Pavarotti was known _____ 6 I'm really doubtful _____ 7 The company isn't liable _____ 8 You can't tell her anything. She's impervious _____ 9 The long hours in my last job were incompatible _____ 10 Ben's disruptive behaviour in class is indicative _____ 11 Tom's 24 and he's still very dependent _____ 12 Mark is totally obsessed _____	a my brown leather jacket. b his beautiful singing voice. c the whole project. I think it'll fail. d any damage incurred to vehicles on these premises. e any kind of criticism. f his brother's success. g deeper psychological problems. h everyone around him. He lives in a world of his own. i his parents for everything. j family life. k football. He thinks of nothing else. l a novel by Michael Morpurgo.

# Pronunciation

## 9 Sounds and spelling

- 1  The letters *ough* can be pronounced in many ways. Match a word in **A** with its phonetic script in **B**. Listen and check.

### ▶▶ Phonetic symbols p107

A	B
1 tough	a /θruː/
2 thought	b /ðəʊ/
3 though	c /θɔːt/
4 through	d /θʌrə/
5 thorough	e /tʌf/

- 2 Read the poem and decide on the pronunciation of the words in *italics*. Use a dictionary if necessary. Try reading it aloud to yourself.

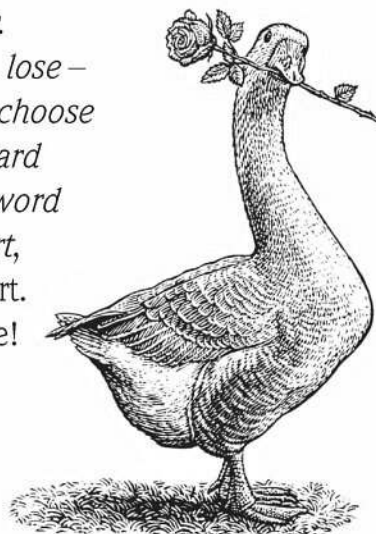
## HINTS ON ENGLISH PRONUNCIATION


I take it you already know  
Of *tough* and *bought* and *cough* and *dough*.  
Others may stumble but not you  
On *thorough*, *plough*, *enough*, and *through*  
Well done! And now you wish perhaps  
To learn of less familiar traps.

Beware of *heard* a dreadful word  
That looks like *beard* and sounds like *bird*  
And *dead*: it's said like *bed* not *bead*  
For goodness sake don't call it *deed*  
Watch out for *meat* and *great* and *threat*  
(They rhyme with *suite* and *straight* and *debt*)


And *here* is not a match for *there*  
Nor *dear* and *fear* for *bear* and *pear*.  
And then there's *dose* and *rose* and *lose* –  
Just look them up – and *goose* and *choose*  
And *cork* and *work* and *card* and *ward*  
And *font* and *front* and *word* and *sword*  
And *do* and *go*, then *thwart* and *cart*,  
Come, come! I've hardly made a start.  
A dreadful language? Why man alive!

I'd mastered it when I was five.  
And yet to write the more I tried,  
I hadn't learnt at fifty-five.



- 3  Listen to the poem and check your pronunciation.
- 4 Write the words from the poem next to their phonetic transcription in column **A**.

	A	B
1 /θruː/	<b>through</b>	<b>threw</b>
2 /hɜːd/		
3 /mɪt/		
4 /swɪt/		
5 /hɪə/		
6 /dɪə/		
7 /beə/		
8 /peə/		
9 /rəʊz/		
10 /tʃuːz/		

-  Listen to ten sentences with words that sound like those in column **A**, but have a different meaning. Write them in column **B**.

- 5 All the words in exercise 4 are **homophones**. They have the same pronunciation but different spelling and meaning. Look at the table below. Say the words in phonetics, then write their homophones.

	1	2
/həʊl/	<b>whole</b>	<b>hole</b>
/flaʊə/		
/wɪtʃ/		
/weə/		
/fluː/		
/sɔːz/		
/sɔːs/		
/kɔːt/		
/piːs/		

# 3

Verb patterns • Verbs + gerund or infinitive • Describing trends  
• Phrasal verbs: *up* and *down* • Losing a syllable

## Enough is enough?

In spite of the cost of living, it's still popular.

Kathleen Norris (1947–)  
Poet

We buy things we don't need with money we don't have to impress people we don't like.

Dave Ramsey (1960–)  
Author and radio host

## Verb patterns

### 1 Verbs + gerund or infinitive

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets, active or passive.

- I'm willing to have (have) less money if it means spending (spend) less time at work.
- Imagine \_\_\_\_\_ (be) a billionaire – it'd be hard to avoid \_\_\_\_\_ (spoil) your children.
- Dave insisted on \_\_\_\_\_ (help) me \_\_\_\_\_ (sort out) my accommodation.
- Jim expects me \_\_\_\_\_ (play) nurse when he's ill – he adores \_\_\_\_\_ (look after)!
- Let me \_\_\_\_\_ (know) what happens – I'd prefer \_\_\_\_\_ (keep) informed.
- If you kids carry on \_\_\_\_\_ (be) naughty, I'll make you \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to bed early!
- I recommend \_\_\_\_\_ (see) this film – no-one could fail \_\_\_\_\_ (move) by it.
- Linda begged me \_\_\_\_\_ (not make) a scene in the restaurant when I threatened \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) without paying.
- I tried \_\_\_\_\_ (persuade) Bob \_\_\_\_\_ (change) his mind when he suggested \_\_\_\_\_ (get) married at his football ground.
- We refused \_\_\_\_\_ (pay) the workmen until they'd finished \_\_\_\_\_ (do) the work.

### 2 Verbs + gerund or infinitive with a change of meaning

Look at the pairs of sentences. In which sentence is the verb pattern correct? Correct the incorrect sentences.

#### try

- Paula's got a new boyfriend now, Jack. I'd try forgetting her, if I were you.
- If your shirt's still not clean, try washing it at a higher temperature.

#### stop

- I got stuck with the work I was doing, so I stopped to chat with a colleague.
- I WISH BOB WOULD STOP TO WRITE EMAILS IN BLOCK CAPITALS!!!

#### remember

- I distinctly remember telling you to post that letter.
- I never remember charging my phone overnight.

#### go on

- Sophie fainted during the lecture. The professor just went on talking as if nothing had happened!
- Jackie won a prize at drama school and went on becoming one of the country's top actresses.

#### need

- You idiot! I think your head needs to examine.
- I won't be long. I just need to check my emails.

#### mean

- If I take the job, it will mean to have to commute.
- I can see that my new manager means to run the department very differently.

### 3 Sentence transformation

Rewrite the sentences using the correct form of the verbs in brackets, followed by the *-ing* or infinitive form.

- 1 I had to laugh when Luke dropped his ice cream! (couldn't help)  
I couldn't help laughing when Luke dropped his ice cream!
- 2 Sandra has given up eating meat. (stop)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 I'm Edward, but I prefer to be called 'Ted'. (would rather)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Do you fancy going out this evening? (feel like)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Donna told me not to forget to bring my swimming costume. (remind)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 6 They can't make you work overtime. (force)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 7 We'd be happy to share a taxi with you. (don't mind)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 8 Why won't you confess to cheating in the exam? (admit)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 9 Babis advised us to stay at Hotel Maistrali. (suggest)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 10 The travel agent encouraged us to book early. (say/had better)  
\_\_\_\_\_

### 4 Neha Gupta, teenage philanthropist

Read the fact file and complete the text about Neha Gupta, using the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

#### Fact file

Charity: Empower Orphans  
Founded: 2009  
Founder: Neha Gupta  
(Pennsylvania, US)  
Funds raised: over \$1m  
Children helped: 25,000



## The power of one

I feel as though it is our generation's duty to fight for the rights of vulnerable children.

At 15, Neha Gupta may have appeared <sup>1</sup> to be (be) a typical US high school student. She enjoyed <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (play) tennis in her free time, but somewhat untypically, she spent most of it <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (help) thousands of orphans and underprivileged children in India and the US <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (have) a better life.

At the age of just nine, Neha decided <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (start) a charity, Empower Orphans, as a result of her visits to India. When staying with her grandparents there, her family often used <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (visit) an orphanage to give the children presents. Neha remembers <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (have) a conversation with a girl who offered <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (show) her round. Neha heard her <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (describe) the hardship she risked <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (face) without any education. The girl kept <sup>11</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (say) how much she would love to go to school, and it made Neha <sup>12</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (realize) how much she took education for granted. She promised <sup>13</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (help) the children and try <sup>14</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (get) them an education. At first people refused <sup>15</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (take) her seriously, but she didn't let it <sup>16</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (stop) her.

'People can't imagine one person <sup>17</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (be able to) make an impact,' says Neha, 'but I believe in the power of one.' Back home, she encouraged friends <sup>18</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (donate) toys and books and organized garage sales. She then started <sup>19</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (sell) goods made by the children in the orphanage. Today, Empower Orphans continues <sup>20</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (grow), with libraries, computer labs, and health clinics in India and the US.

For Neha, it all meant <sup>21</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (miss) out on some social life, but she's never regretted <sup>22</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (spend) so much time with the children. 'I love <sup>23</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (see) them smile,' she says. A classmate wrote a profile of Neha for the school newspaper. 'Here's this girl who's close to what I'm like, and she's already managed <sup>24</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (do) so much with her life and helped so many people. It's mind-boggling.'

## Reading

### 5 A president for our times?

- 1 You are going to read about **José Mujica**, the president of Uruguay. Choose one option in *italics* in a, b, and c to complete the sentence. If I had to guess, I would imagine that he ...
- a *had a chauffeur-driven limousine / drove an old Volkswagen Beetle.*
  - b *lived in a huge presidential palace / a small farmhouse.*
  - c *would like to see more / less economic growth in Uruguay.*

Read the article and check.

- 2 Put the phrases a–g in the correct places 1–7 in the text.
- a I'm just sick of the way things are.
  - b much of it in dungeon-like conditions
  - c I'm the son of my history.
  - d Global politics should be moving in that direction
  - e set amid chrysanthemum fields outside Montevideo
  - f flies economy class
  - g I'm opposed to waste
- 3 These statements about José Mujica are *all true*. Find and underline evidence in the article to support them.
- 1 He earns a lot.
  - 2 He doesn't imagine that his lifestyle would be a popular one.
  - 3 He isn't the first liberal leader of Uruguay.
  - 4 He has lived in very difficult conditions.
  - 5 He doesn't care much about his appearance.
  - 6 He isn't encouraged by the direction the world is going in today.
  - 7 He believes that politics is based too much on economics.
  - 8 He thinks we are guilty of being a throwaway society.
- 4 Match the words highlighted in the article with the definitions below.
- 1 a fixed idea that you can't stop thinking about obsession
  - 2 a practical way of dealing with problems \_\_\_\_\_
  - 3 famous for something negative \_\_\_\_\_
  - 4 unwillingly \_\_\_\_\_
  - 5 stupidity \_\_\_\_\_
  - 6 the greatest part \_\_\_\_\_
  - 7 reduced public spending \_\_\_\_\_
  - 8 manageable in the long term \_\_\_\_\_
  - 9 label \_\_\_\_\_
  - 10 the soft part of a bed \_\_\_\_\_



## A president FOR OUR times?



### Glossary

<b>accumulation:</b>	collection of more and more
<b>adopt:</b>	choose to follow
<b>cantankerousness:</b>	argumentativeness
<b>contradiction:</b>	two opposing arguments
<b>decrying:</b>	criticizing publicly
<b>disgruntled:</b>	unhappy
<b>dungeon:</b>	underground prison cell
<b>exude:</b>	show openly
<b>forsworn:</b>	decided to live without
<b>plaudits:</b>	praise and congratulations
<b>prudent:</b>	careful
<b>railed against:</b>	criticized strongly
<b>reaffirmed:</b>	made clear again
<b>sober:</b>	simple and down-to-earth
<b>ticking along:</b>	progressing satisfactorily
<b>unpolished:</b>	rough and simple

If anyone could claim to be leading by example in an age of austerity, it is **José Mujica, Uruguay's president**, who has forsworn a state palace in favour of a farmhouse, donates the vast bulk of his salary to social projects, <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, and drives an old Volkswagen Beetle.

But the former guerrilla fighter is clearly disgruntled by those who tag him 'the world's poorest president' and – much as he would like others to adopt a more sober lifestyle – the 78-year-old has been in politics long enough to recognize the folly of claiming to be a model for anyone. 'If I asked people to live as I live, they would kill me,' Mujica said during an interview in his small but cosy one-bedroom home <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.

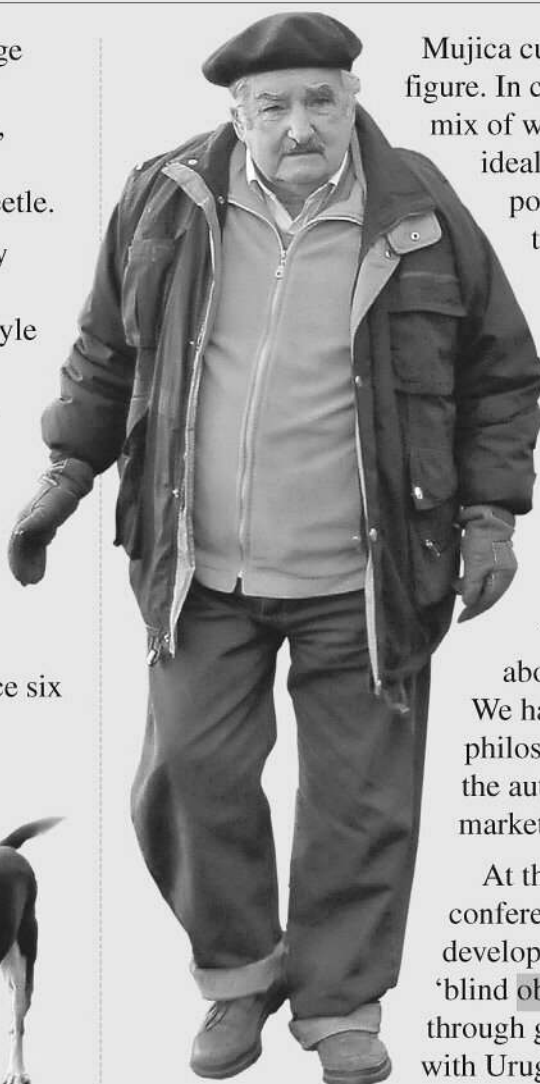
The president is a former member of the Tupamaros guerrilla group, which was notorious in the early 1970s for bank robberies, kidnappings, and distributing stolen food and money among the poor. He was shot by the police six times and spent 14 years in a military prison, <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.

Since becoming leader of Uruguay in 2010, however, he has won plaudits worldwide for living within his means, decrying excessive consumption, and pushing ahead with policies on same-sex marriage, abortion, and cannabis legalization that have reaffirmed Uruguay as the most socially liberal country in Latin America.



But the man who is best known as Pepe, \_\_\_\_\_ says those who consider him poor fail to understand the meaning of wealth. 'I'm not the poorest president. The poorest is the one who needs a lot to live,' he said. 'My lifestyle is the consequence of my wounds.' <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ There have been years when I would have been happy just to have a mattress.'

He shares the home with his wife, Lucía Topolansky, a leading member of Congress who has also served as acting president. As I near the home of Uruguay's first couple, the only security is two guards parked on the approach road, and Mujica's three-legged dog, Manuela.



Mujica cuts an impressively unpolished figure. In conversation, he exudes a mix of warmth and cantankerousness, idealism about humanity's potential and a weariness about the modern world.

Uruguay's options to improve society are limited, he believes, by the power of global capital.

<sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ We're in an age in which we can't live without accepting the logic of the market,' he said.

'Contemporary politics is all about short-term pragmatism. We have abandoned religion and philosophy ... What we have left is the automatization of doing what the market tells us.'

At the United Nations Rio+20 conference on sustainable development, he railed against the 'blind obsession'; to achieve growth through greater consumption. But, with Uruguay's economy ticking along at a growth rate of more than 3%,

Mujica – somewhat grudgingly, it seems – accepts he must deliver material expansion. 'I'm president. I'm fighting for more work and more investment because people ask for more and more,' he said. 'I'm trying to expand consumption but to diminish unnecessary consumption ... <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ – of energy, or resources, or time. We need to build things that last. That's an ideal, but it may not be realistic because we live in an age of accumulation.'

Asked for a solution to this contradiction, the president admits he doesn't have the answers, but the former Marxist said the search for a solution must be political. 'We can almost recycle everything now. If we lived within our means – by being prudent – the seven billion people in the world could have everything they needed.

<sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_,' he said. 'But we think of people and countries, not as a species.' He continued, 'The world will always need revolution. That doesn't mean shooting and violence. A revolution is when you change your thinking.'

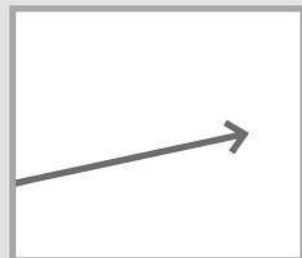


# Vocabulary

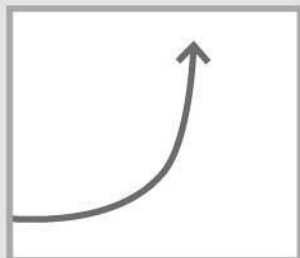
## 6 Describing trends

1 Write the phrases in the box under the correct graph.

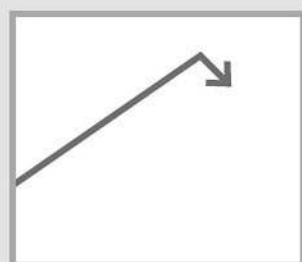
fluctuate	pick up	level off
rise steadily	peak	shoot up



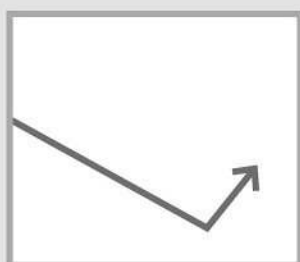
a \_\_\_\_\_



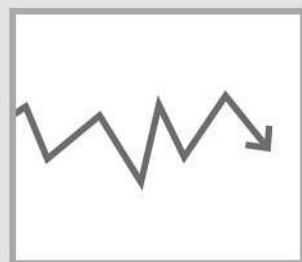
b \_\_\_\_\_



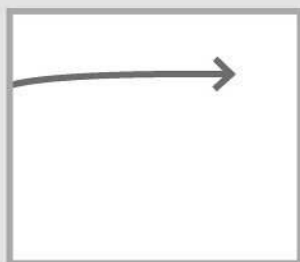
c \_\_\_\_\_



d \_\_\_\_\_



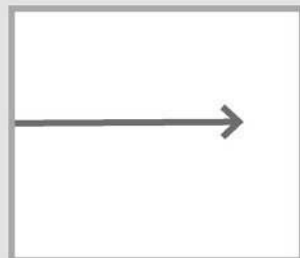
e \_\_\_\_\_



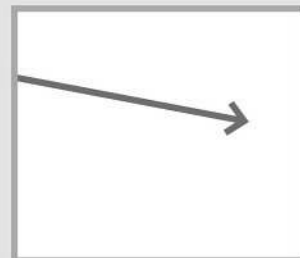
f \_\_\_\_\_

2 Now write these phrases under the correct graph.

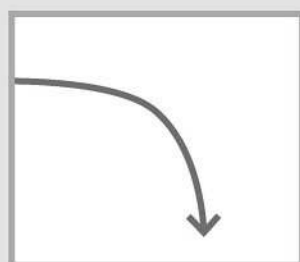
bottom out	plummet	decrease gradually
remain stable	fall slightly	



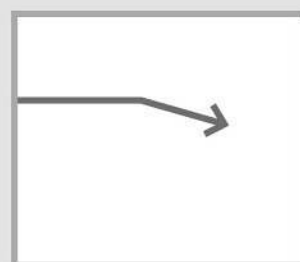
a \_\_\_\_\_



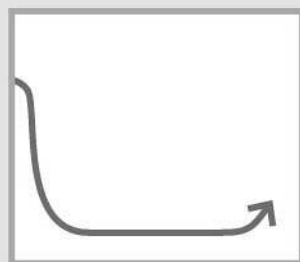
b \_\_\_\_\_



c \_\_\_\_\_



d \_\_\_\_\_



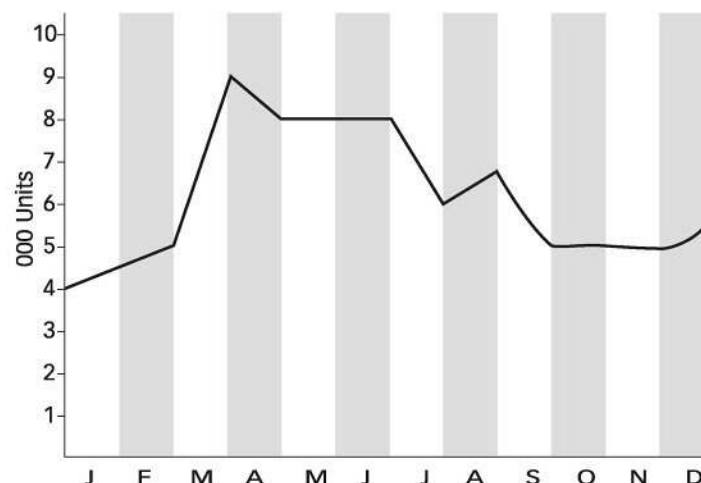
e \_\_\_\_\_

3 Look at the graph of last year's sales from Smartcom Ltd. Complete the text, using the correct form of the verbs from exercises 1 and 2. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

Smartcom sales <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ in January and February and then <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ in March when the economic recovery began. They <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ at 9,000 units in April and then <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ before <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ around the 8,000 unit mark during May and June.

July saw a <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ as economic growth started to slow generally, but sales <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ again in August. They <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ for the third time in September but <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ throughout October and November. Finally, in the run-up to Christmas, sales were healthy, <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ to 6,000 units by the end of the year.


Smartcom Ltd. Sales




# Listening

## 7 A family business

1 Read the newspaper extract. Why are these two men in the news?

2  Read the questions. Then listen to **Part One** of Vijay and Bhikhu's story and choose the correct answers.

- 1 Vijay's first business was
  - a like a corner shop.
  - b a pharmaceutical company.
- 2 Bhikhu first worked
  - a for a firm of architects.
  - b in a pharmacy.
- 3 Vijay started his pharmacy business
  - a with his brother.
  - b on his own.
- 4 Bhikhu is good at
  - a making money
  - b taking care of money.
- 5 Vijay and Bhikhu are
  - a ambitious for their family.
  - b competitive with each other.
- 6 Their mother
  - a still works full-time for them.
  - b was the key figure in their lives.

3  Listen to **Part Two**. Are the statements true (✓) or false (✗)? Correct the false ones.

- 1 Vijay has received a business award.
- 2 Neither Vijay nor Bhikhu seek the usual trappings of wealth.
- 3 They had more friends when they were younger.
- 4 They do spoil themselves sometimes.
- 5 Bhikhu is happier spending money on other people rather than himself.
- 6 They believe that being realistic is all you need to do to succeed.



### The inspiring tale of two Asian brothers who made a fortune out of nothing.

Over 40 years ago, at the age of 16, Vijay Patel and his brother Bhikhu left Kenya and arrived in Britain with £5 between them. They now own a pharmaceutical company worth £500 million (its value shot up from £400m recently), and appear on the latest Asian Rich List. They remain modest about their success, and avoid the ostentatious lifestyle of other 'Bollygarchs'\*, so it's not because of the money that they're not thinking of retiring. Vijay says: 'To be honest, I don't do it for the money any more, I like to see businesses flower.'

\* a humorous term for rich Asians, combining the words 'Bollywood' and 'oligarch'

4  Listen to **Part Two** again. Complete the sentences with the exact words used.

- 1 We \_\_\_\_\_ for six hundred people directly.
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ and my brother, I don't think it has.
- 3 I \_\_\_\_\_ we're approachable ...
- 4 I mean, clearly, \_\_\_\_\_ luxuries in life one tends to sort of \_\_\_\_\_ oneself a little ...
- 5 I would rather do some \_\_\_\_\_ work than \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 Do not let small \_\_\_\_\_ or calamities stop you. Chase your dreams and \_\_\_\_\_, ...
- 7 ... if I can \_\_\_\_\_ one life, then my job in this world \_\_\_\_\_.

5 Match the words and phrases in **A** with their meanings in **B**.

A	B
1 the equivalent of	a brothers/sisters competing
2 a recipe for disaster	b a quantity of medicine
3 power struggles	c terrible events
4 complement each other	d a similar type of thing to
5 sibling rivalry	e fights for control
6 leave the nest	f conditions leading to major problems
7 calamities	g provide what the other person lacks
8 a dose	h move out of the parental home

# Phrasal verbs

## 8 up and down

- Choose the correct particle in the sentences.
  - We have dress-*up/-down* Fridays in my company – we can come to work in anything we want.
  - I'm sorry, it's very noisy – can you speak *up/down*?
  - I traded my 4x4 *up/down* for a Mini.
  - I used *up/down* all the milk making milkshakes.
  - We couldn't find where the concert was, so we ended *up/down* going to the cinema.
  - My motorbike broke *up/down* on the motorway.
  - Ted modestly plays *up/down* all the awards he's won.
  - Stop putting me *up/down* in front of other people!
  - Kay's so ambitious – she's always talking herself *up/down*.
- Complete the sentences using the correct form of the verbs, plus *up* or *down*.

**Increase and decrease** | speed    save    cut    slow

- Drivers \_\_\_\_\_ for speed cameras but then \_\_\_\_\_ again once they've gone past.
- We're \_\_\_\_\_ on luxuries because we need to \_\_\_\_\_ for a new car.

**Better and worse** | lighten    run    dumb    do

- Stop complaining about TV being \_\_\_\_\_ I mean, \_\_\_\_\_ – this is only a romantic comedy!
- This area is a bit \_\_\_\_\_, but if we \_\_\_\_\_ this house \_\_\_\_\_, it could be lovely.

**Beginning and ending** | boot    shut    stand    bring

- My laptop was taking so long to \_\_\_\_\_, I tried to restart it, but now it's taking an eternity to \_\_\_\_\_!
- The government was \_\_\_\_\_ by ministerial resignations, and the Prime Minister had no choice but to \_\_\_\_\_ himself.

**Completion** | track    live    wind    buy

- I thought all the candles in town \_\_\_\_\_ during the power cuts, but I managed to \_\_\_\_\_ a shop that still had some.
- We all \_\_\_\_\_ in a karaoke bar after work. I think my rendition of *I Will Survive* might be hard to \_\_\_\_\_.



## Pronunciation

### 9 Losing a syllable

- Some unstressed syllables are normally lost in speech. It is often the /ə/ sound that is lost.

Read and listen to these examples. The syllables that have been lost are underlined.

● ● ●		● ●	
secretary	/'sekɹətɹi/	business	/'biznəs/
reasonable	/'ri:znəbl/	average	/'ævɹɪdʒ/

- Listen and circle the two words in each sentence which lose a syllable when spoken. Underline the syllable which is lost.
  - I couldn't run this business without having you as my secretary
  - Interest rates have risen on average by one percentage point a year.
  - My preference would be to hire a specialist to audit the firm.
  - The electorate demand a reasonable standard of living.
  - Liberal economists wrongly assume that people are rational.
  - Corporate travellers sometimes fly economy class.
  - Due to seasonal demand, our factories are working all day and night.
  - After great success nationally, we're looking to expand into different countries.

# 4

Modal auxiliary verbs • Speculating • Set expressions with modals  
• Idiomatic collocations • Stress and intonation • Verb + preposition

## Not all it seems

Reality is merely an illusion,  
albeit a very persistent one.

Albert Einstein (1879–1955)  
Scientist

Very few of us are  
what we seem.

Agatha Christie (1890–1976)  
Crime writer



## Modal auxiliary verbs

### 1 Speculating – present and future

Complete the sentences with one of the modal verbs.  
Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

can't	will	must	won't	should
might	could	can	may	

- It \_\_\_\_\_ be London in the background of that photo – that's definitely the Shard.
- David \_\_\_\_\_ be pleased that Arsenal won today – he's a big fan.
- It'll be a miracle if we get to the airport on time, but we \_\_\_\_\_ just make it.
- That \_\_\_\_\_ be Roberta's mother – she looks way too young!
- There \_\_\_\_\_ be huge traffic jams on this road some days, but often it's fine.
- It \_\_\_\_\_ rain later. The forecast said there was a 50% chance.
- Janice \_\_\_\_\_ be upset she's been made redundant – she was going to leave anyway.
- You \_\_\_\_\_ check that painting's genuine before buying it – there are some very good fakes around.

### 2 Speculating – past

Match the sentences in **A** and **B** and complete the ones in **B** with a modal verb and the perfect infinitive of the verb in brackets. Sometimes more than one modal is possible.

can't	must	won't	should	might	could	can
-------	------	-------	--------	-------	-------	-----

#### A

- I'm not sure about that investment offer. ☒ f
- Pete's car is parked outside. ☐
- Why are the boys still glued to the TV? ☐
- I'm sure your secret's still safe with Vicky. ☐
- I've looked everywhere for my glasses. ☐
- Losing 7–1 wasn't so bad! ☐
- I'm sorry, we're just about to go out. ☐

#### B

- It \_\_\_\_\_ (be) worse!
- Where \_\_\_\_\_ I \_\_\_\_\_ (put) them?
- You \_\_\_\_\_ (ring) before coming!
- He \_\_\_\_\_ (go) very far.
- She \_\_\_\_\_ (tell) anyone.
- I think it might have been (be) a con trick.
- It's 10.30 p.m.! The football \_\_\_\_\_ (finish) by now.

### 3 Modals – other meanings

Choose the correct ways to complete the sentences.

- 1 We needn't have paid to get into the museum as students – *we saved £15/we wasted £15.*
- 2 I could make myself understood in Spanish *when the waiter took our order/as a child.*
- 3 I must stop having business lunches – *I'm putting on too much weight/the company is stopping my expense allowance.*
- 4 When I was small, my parents would *live in a houseboat/often take me camping.*
- 5 I've just seen the latest weather forecast. It could *not be very hot/be really hot* tomorrow.
- 6 You don't have to apologize – *it proves that you were in the wrong/but it would be nice if you did.*

### 4 Misleading adverts

Read about false claims made by advertisers and choose the correct options in the text. Sometimes both are possible.

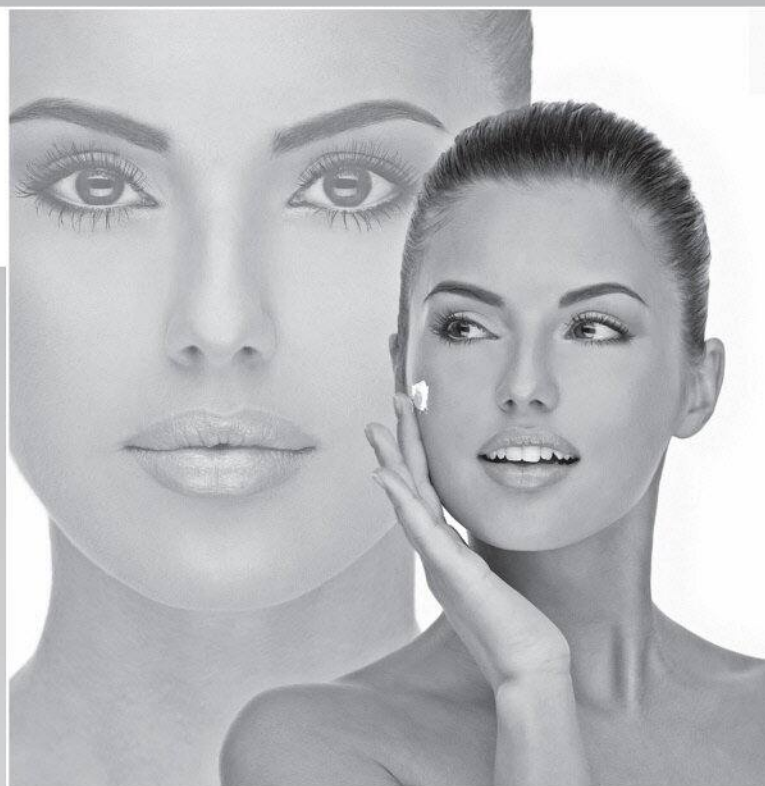
## Too good to be true

In adverts, you <sup>1</sup> *would/will* often see people staring open-mouthed at how wondrous a product is, clearly thinking that it <sup>2</sup> *can't/isn't able to* be true. It's always worth bearing in mind that it <sup>3</sup> *can/might* well not be.

Generally, advertisers <sup>4</sup> *will/may* get away with a bit of exaggeration, but companies <sup>5</sup> *mustn't/don't* have to push the boundaries too far, as it <sup>6</sup> *'s able to/can* cost millions in damages if someone sues for making 'false claims'.

Adverts for Dannon's Activia® yoghurt said that it <sup>7</sup> *could/was able to* provide various nutritional benefits, but in a legal challenge, the courts <sup>8</sup> *couldn't/wouldn't* accept that these were 'clinically' and 'scientifically' proven. Dannon <sup>9</sup> *had to/ought to* pay up to \$45 million to consumers who felt deceived, and limit its health claims to strictly factual ones in future.

It <sup>10</sup> *must have/can have* come as more of a surprise when Ferrero, the makers of the chocolate and hazelnut spread Nutella®, began promoting its nutritional benefits (though long-term addicts <sup>11</sup> *can't have/will have* been pleased to learn that they <sup>12</sup> *didn't need to worry/needn't have worried* about it being unhealthy for all those years). However, it <sup>13</sup> *may have/will have* been a step too far for Ferrero to maintain it was a healthy 'good for you treat.' After having to pay millions in compensation to the customers who sued over this false claim, the company accepted that it <sup>14</sup> *could/should* change the adverts and product labels.



Of course, images <sup>15</sup> *mustn't/don't have to* mislead either. An Olay advert for Definity eye cream showed former model Twiggy looking impressively wrinkle-free. You <sup>16</sup> *didn't have to be/mustn't have been* an expert to see that the image <sup>17</sup> *must have been/had to be* photoshopped. In real life, Twiggy <sup>18</sup> *could have/may have* been looking good for someone pushing 60, but in the advert she looked rather a lot younger than she <sup>19</sup> *should have/could have* done. After receiving complaints, the advertising authorities confirmed it was a case of image manipulation and banned the advert, saying that it <sup>20</sup> *could/was able to* give consumers a 'misleading impression of the effect the product could achieve'.



## 5 Set expressions with modals

- 1 Complete each group of expressions in **A** with *can*, *might*, *must*, *should*, or *will*, in the correct form, positive or negative. Then match them with the correct definitions in **B**.

A		
1 <input type="checkbox"/> You	_____	be joking!
2 <input type="checkbox"/> I	_____	say ...
3 <input type="checkbox"/> It's a	_____	.
4 <input type="checkbox"/> How	_____	I know?
5 <input type="checkbox"/> I	_____	wonder if ...
6 <input type="checkbox"/> I	_____	think so too!
7 <input type="checkbox"/> We	_____	see.
8 <input type="checkbox"/> You	_____	keep forgetting my name!
9 <input type="checkbox"/> You	_____	see.
10 <input type="checkbox"/> I	_____	be bothered.
11 <input type="checkbox"/> It	_____	be helped.
12 <input type="checkbox"/> You	_____	say that again!
13 <input type="checkbox"/> You	_____	as well.
14 <input type="checkbox"/> I	_____	have guessed.
15 <input type="checkbox"/> You	_____	well ask!

B	
a	This is something you shouldn't miss doing.
b	You can't be serious.
c	I have to admit that this is true.
d	I wouldn't be surprised if ...
e	That's only what I would expect in this situation.
f	Why am I expected to have the answer?
g	You have an annoying habit of forgetting my name.
h	I'll be proved right.
i	Let's wait and find out.
j	Nothing can be done about it.
k	You're absolutely right.
l	I haven't got the energy or enthusiasm for it.
m	I'm not surprised.
n	There's no reason for you not to.
o	That's a good question.

- 2 Read the conversation about 'cold callers' – people who telephone you at home without your permission in order to sell you something. Choose the correct set expression from exercise 1 to complete it.

### Cold callers

**Beth** Aaagh! That was another cold caller!

**Andy** <sup>1</sup> *I might have guessed./I might well ask!* You were being incredibly rude.

**Beth** Well, what do you expect?! <sup>2</sup> *I can't be bothered/It can't be helped* to be polite to them. <sup>3</sup> *They might as well ring/They will keep ringing* when I'm trying to work!

**Andy** <sup>4</sup> *I must say,/I shouldn't wonder if* that is one of the biggest problems of working from home. How on earth do they get our number?

**Beth** <sup>5</sup> *You must be joking!/You might well ask!* But then a lot of them are crooks. That was someone pretending to be calling from Microsoft saying there was a virus on my computer, and wanting me to give them access to it. I didn't, of course.

**Andy** <sup>6</sup> *You can say that again!/I should think so too!*




**Beth** Well, it's a scam I've heard about. They mess up your computer and charge a fortune to put it right. Mind you, there may well be a virus on my computer – <sup>7</sup> *how should I know?/you'll see*. I had to laugh when she said, 'Your computer's working very slowly, isn't it?' I did think, <sup>8</sup> *You must be joking!/You can say that again!*

**Andy** Maybe we should register with that organization that's supposed to stop cold calls?

**Beth** <sup>9</sup> *We might as well/It's a must* – it's free and it can't do any harm. But I think it only reduces the number of calls you get.

**Andy** Well, <sup>10</sup> *we'll see/you'll see*.

 Now listen and check your answers.

# Reading

## 6 Modern day magic

- 1 Look at photos 1–3 of magicians. In which photos can you find the words in the box?

lapel	shiny dinner jacket	trainers	sequins
bow tie	baggy jeans	top hat	bomber jacket
magic wand	baseball cap	make-up	

Which photo suggests a magic act that ...?

- a has 'street cred' \_\_\_\_\_  
 b is 'old hat' \_\_\_\_\_  
 c has 'glitz and glamour' \_\_\_\_\_

1



2



3



- 2 Read and listen to the text about the magician **Dynamo**. Which photo in exercise 1 shows him? Choose the correct option in the sentences.

- Before magicians like Dynamo, magic had become *a minority interest/too clever*.
- After his tricks, he likes to leave *the stage quietly/his public completely confused*.
- Dynamo appears to *read people's minds/prefer doing large-scale illusions*.
- He had a difficult childhood because *he developed a health problem/of his deprived background*.
- He left school because he *was being bullied/didn't fit in there*.
- Dynamo's career took off when he *was lent some money/borrowed equipment to film his tricks*.
- He has gained a huge audience for his *TV show/Internet clips*.
- Celebrities seem to be attracted by Dynamo's *worldwide fame/modest nature*.
- He is a *latecomer to/founding member of* the Magic Circle.
- The Magic Circle didn't accept him at first because he was too *different/clichéd*.

- 3 Match the words from the text in **A** and **B** that have similar meanings.

A	B
1 traditional	a worldwide
2 newcomer	b keen
3 stunt	c sickly
4 astounded	d old hat
5 globally	e trick
6 debilitated	f upstart
7 enthusiastic	g stunned

# DYNAMO

## A modern-day magician

**When you hear the word 'magician', what springs to mind? Is it the variety show magician with magic wand, in a traditional outfit of shiny waistcoat, bow tie, and top hat? Or perhaps it's the glitz and glamour of a Vegas-style illusionist, complete with wide lapelled sequined jacket, perm, and full make-up, that occurs to you first?**

Magic seemed to go through a phase of being, quite literally, old hat. It had a rather old-fashioned feel to it, no matter how clever the acts were. But now there's a new type of magician who is bringing magic back into the mainstream in Britain and giving it street cred into the bargain. Thanks to the street tricks of a young man called Dynamo, magic and illusion are once again supercool.

Dynamo has been celebrated for the modernity of his act. He doesn't use a stage, a string of assistants, or any of the shiny accessories of traditional magic shows. Instead he walks the streets in a bomber jacket, a baseball cap, and trainers, accompanied by a hand-held camera operator, sharing his magic with the astounded general public, and then strolling quietly away, before they can get their heads around what has just happened. He doesn't have a speciality. He is as brilliant with cards and small hand tricks as he is with far bigger stunts of mystery and illusion. He can pull out the playing card you were thinking about, put mobile phones in bottles, and change names on credit cards just as easily as he strolls down buildings or levitates – or once memorably walked on water across the River Thames! When it comes to magic, it appears that he can do it all.

Dynamo, aka Steven Frayne, didn't have the easiest start in life. He was born in industrial Bradford, northern England, in a rundown part of the city to a teenage mum. His father was in and out of prison and he was partly brought up by his great-grandfather, who was an enthusiastic amateur magician. Born with a digestive disorder (Crohn's disease) which left him severely debilitated, the young Steven failed to put on any weight, and as a small, pale, and sickly child, he was an easy target for school bullies. His great-grandfather showed him how to use magic tricks to his advantage, and as he got a name for himself, the bullying ceased. However, he was always regarded as odd and an outsider, so school life wasn't a success and he left for London while still in his teens.

After having been granted a small business loan, Dynamo bought himself a DVD recorder and laptop and started filming some of the trick sequences that would make up his first DVD, *Underground Magic*. His current worldwide following gradually came about after some of his video clips appeared on YouTube™. A couple of thousand passersby in London watched him walk across the Thames in front of the Houses of Parliament on a Saturday afternoon, before he was picked up by a police



speedboat. A couple of years later, 1.6 billion viewers globally had watched the illusion on YouTube, which led to the offer of his own TV show, *Magician Impossible*, on a small TV channel. In the show, he performs tricks that leave his audience stunned, including a variety of celebrities. Performing tricks on famous people makes it clear that his targets are not in on the act, and celebrities appear keen to work with this impressive but quiet and unassuming character. He walked through a shop window in front of footballer Rio Ferdinand; he removed the sunglasses from the album cover photo of rapper Tinie Tempah through the CD case; and even Prince Charles became a fan when Dynamo turned a pile of papers on his desk in the palace into real money.

The famous Magic Circle was slower to show their appreciation of this newcomer on their scene. This organization for the best of all magicians is shrouded in secrecy, even as to its location. As Dynamo said, 'They regarded me as a bit of an upstart. I wear a hoodie and trainers rather than a top hat and tails. I incorporate hip hop into my act ... I've always tried to go against the clichés of whatever magic is or was.' However, they eventually opened their doors to him – wherever those doors are. But although he may have finally been accepted into mainstream magic, he hasn't lost any of his creative drive. 'It's not enough for me to amaze people once or twice,' he says. 'I need to keep doing it. That means doing more and more amazing stuff.'



# Listening

## 7 Euphemisms – in an estate agent's

- 1 Listen to an estate agent describing the features of a house to a couple who are interested in buying it. Number the features in the order that they are described by the estate agent.

Price	—	Living room	—
Location	—	Front garden	—
Condition of house	—	Back garden	—
Kitchen	—	Parking	—
Dining room	—		

- 2 Read the true defects of the house 1–10. Listen again and complete the euphemistic expressions that the estate agent uses.

- Churchill Road is in a noisy, busy area.  
*Churchill Road is in a lively, popular area of town.*
- The local shops are a 30-minute walk away.  
*The local shops \_\_\_\_\_.*
- There are only two buses a day into town.  
*There's \_\_\_\_\_.*
- The house needs extensive redecoration.  
*It's \_\_\_\_\_.*  
*A lick \_\_\_\_\_.*
- The roof needs replacing.  
*The roof \_\_\_\_\_.*
- The kitchen units are old.  
*A little \_\_\_\_\_.*  
*\_\_\_\_\_ modernizing!*
- The kitchen is small.  
*It's \_\_\_\_\_, ...*
- The dining room is dark.  
*It \_\_\_\_\_, ...*
- The back garden is overgrown.  
*The garden is \_\_\_\_\_.*
- The house is expensive.  
*Not \_\_\_\_\_.*



- 3 Complete the euphemistic statements with the phrases in the box.

go amiss	the most exciting	the best curry
ample opportunity	on the watery side	ideal for
exactly welcoming	World Cup level	

- The kitchen is ideal for someone who prefers to eat out a lot.
  - The football wasn't exactly \_\_\_\_\_.
  - That film wasn't \_\_\_\_\_ I've seen.
  - This soup is a bit \_\_\_\_\_.
  - I'm not sure she was pleased to see me – she wasn't \_\_\_\_\_.
  - A bit of punctuation in your essay wouldn't \_\_\_\_\_.
  - What's Kevin's Spanish pronunciation like? I'd say there's \_\_\_\_\_ for improvement.
  - That's not exactly \_\_\_\_\_ I've eaten.
- 4 Now match the statements in 3 with what they were really thinking.

**A** It desperately needs some commas and full stops!

**B** It was amateurish.

**C** I couldn't taste any spice in it.

**D** She was very unfriendly.

**E** It's not thick enough.

**F** It was really boring!

**G** It's impossible to understand him.

**H** It's not good for cooking in.

# Vocabulary

## 8 Idiomatic collocations: adjective + noun

Choose the correct options to make the idiomatic collocations in the box. Then use them to complete the sentences.

<i>fine/thin line</i>	<i>wishful thoughts/thinking</i>
<i>sore/painful point</i>	<i>last resort/option</i>
<i>long/difficult shot</i>	<i>itchy/restless feet</i>
<i>raw/nasty deal</i>	<i>saving grace/factor</i>
<i>slippery/slippy slope</i>	
<i>foregone/foreseeable conclusion</i>	

- It may seem like a \_\_\_\_\_, but we're hoping the new branch of our solar power company in Scotland will be a big success.
- Don't talk about cars with Jenny at the moment. She's just had hers stolen, so it's a bit of a \_\_\_\_\_.
- The president talks as if his re-election is guaranteed, but it's by no means a \_\_\_\_\_.
- There are lots of treatments we can try before thinking of an operation. Surgery will only be performed as a \_\_\_\_\_.
- I thought the conference was poor, but the \_\_\_\_\_ was making so many useful new contacts.
- It wasn't brave to get into that fight – there's a \_\_\_\_\_ between bravery and stupidity sometimes, you know.
- Zoe's staying at the Hilton and I'm in a cheap hotel outside town – I think I got a \_\_\_\_\_!
- Paula has no real chance of getting that job she's applied for – it's just \_\_\_\_\_ on her part.
- I never stay long in the same city – after a few months I get \_\_\_\_\_ again.
- I can see an argument for assisted suicide, but you don't know where it might lead. It's a \_\_\_\_\_.

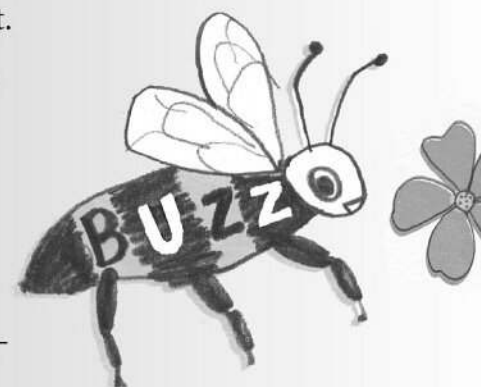
## 9 Onomatopoeic verbs

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in the box. Use each one twice.

buzz creak roar rumble sizzle squeal yap whine

### Literal meaning

- My neighbour has two little dogs that \_\_\_\_\_ all night – it drives me mad!
- I woke up to the sound of sausages \_\_\_\_\_ in the pan. Bliss!
- The lion suddenly \_\_\_\_\_ and frightened all the children at the zoo.
- I could hear the thunder \_\_\_\_\_ in the distance.
- The old door \_\_\_\_\_ as I opened it.
- The piglets \_\_\_\_\_ with delight as they were let loose in the muddy field.
- I could hear the bees \_\_\_\_\_ around the flowers.
- I loathe mosquitoes – it's not just their bites, but that high-pitched \_\_\_\_\_ that keeps you guessing where they are!



### Metaphorical meaning

- The engine of the giant truck \_\_\_\_\_ into life and I climbed aboard.
- The audience waited for the star of the show to arrive. The theatre was \_\_\_\_\_ with excitement!
- Oh, for goodness sake, will you children stop \_\_\_\_\_! I'm tired of hearing what's wrong with everything today!
- Everyone was looking for shade in the \_\_\_\_\_ heat of the afternoon.
- With an ageing population, the care system for the elderly is \_\_\_\_\_ under the strain.
- All of the gang went to prison after one of their members \_\_\_\_\_ to the police.
- The argument about politicians' expenses has \_\_\_\_\_ on for months, without coming to any definite conclusion.
- I saw someone driving along the motorway, \_\_\_\_\_ away on their phone!

## Pronunciation

### 10 Stress and intonation with modal verbs

- 1 The meaning of modal verbs can change according to the stress and intonation patterns of the sentence. Read and listen to the pairs of sentences and underline the main stress. Then match each sentence with the follow-up sentence that reflects its meaning.

- 1 I could invite him to the party. b  
I could invite him to the party. a  
a Then I would get to see him again.  
b But I really don't want to.
- 2 He might have told me what was going on. \_\_\_\_\_  
He might have told me what was going on. \_\_\_\_\_  
a Then I could have done something about it.  
b But I really can't remember.
- 3 Do you have to work all evening? \_\_\_\_\_  
Do you have to work all evening? \_\_\_\_\_  
a I was hoping we could go out for dinner.  
b Or are you just working for some of it?
- 4 You could have hit him. \_\_\_\_\_  
You could have hit him. \_\_\_\_\_  
a You really should drive more carefully!  
b But it wouldn't have been a good idea.
- 5 I might go out this evening. \_\_\_\_\_  
I might go out this evening. \_\_\_\_\_  
a But I probably won't.  
b I don't fancy staying at home.
- 6 I could hardly walk home. \_\_\_\_\_  
I could hardly walk home. \_\_\_\_\_  
a It's over ten miles!  
b My legs were so stiff after the football match.
- 7 Jason will keep singing. \_\_\_\_\_  
Jason will keep singing. \_\_\_\_\_  
a It really gets on my nerves.  
b He loves it too much to stop.
- 8 You could close the door. \_\_\_\_\_  
You could close the door. \_\_\_\_\_  
a Then the light won't keep her awake.  
b Then I wouldn't have to sit in this cold draught!

- 2 Listen and check. Then practise repeating the sentences with the correct stress and intonation.

## Prepositions

### 11 Verb + preposition

Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions.

- 1 In times of difficulty, he always turns \_\_\_\_\_ his parents.
- 2 His conviction for mobile phone use while driving counted \_\_\_\_\_ him when he renewed his car insurance.
- 3 The article said there was an increase in the number of babies worldwide born \_\_\_\_\_ poverty.
- 4 I told him he needed to work harder, but he didn't react \_\_\_\_\_ my suggestion very well.
- 5 The Hollywood star insisted \_\_\_\_\_ bringing her staff of 20 people with her wherever she went.
- 6 The money they've saved over the years amounts \_\_\_\_\_ a small fortune.
- 7 After qualifying \_\_\_\_\_ a doctor, she went to work in war-torn Africa for a year.
- 8 China now accounts \_\_\_\_\_ more than a quarter of global CO<sub>2</sub> emissions.
- 9 The interviewer questioned the minister \_\_\_\_\_ the government's education policy.
- 10 I don't mind a joke, but I hate being laughed \_\_\_\_\_ in public. Isn't that just normal?



# 5

Avoiding repetition • Using auxiliaries • Reduced infinitives • Synonyms in context  
• Phrasal verbs and synonyms • British and American English

## Culture clashes

No culture can live, if it attempts to be exclusive.


**Mahatma Gandhi** (1869–1948)  
Philosopher and pacifist

Those who know nothing of foreign languages know nothing of their own.

**Johann Wolfgang von Goethe** (1749–1832)  
Poet, novelist, and dramatist

## Avoiding repetition

### 1 Using auxiliaries

 Complete the conversation with an auxiliary or modal verb. Then listen and compare.

## Welcome to Florence!

**Eamon** Hi, you must be our new English flatmate, Ella.

**Ella** Hello. Yes, I <sup>1</sup> am . And you are ... ?

**Eamon** Eamon. Welcome to Florence!

**Ella** Eamon – that's an Irish name.

**Eamon** It <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ indeed. I'm from Ballyliffin in County Donegal!

**Ella** I know that village ...

**Eamon** Really?! Not many people <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ .

**Ella** My dad and my brother played golf there just a couple of years ago.

**Eamon** They <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ , <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ they?! That's amazing!

**Ella** Yeah. So, what about Florence? Have you been living here long?

**Eamon** I <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ . I came for a year and I'm still here three years later.

**Ella** You must like it then.

**Eamon** I <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ . I can't imagine who <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ . And you, you arrived yesterday?

**Ella** Well, I <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ , but my suitcases <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ ! They haven't arrived yet.

**Eamon** Oh no. Are you going to contact the airline?

**Ella** I already <sup>11</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ . At first they said they'd be delivered today, but they just called to say they <sup>12</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ be in till tomorrow morning.

**Eamon** Oh, that's too bad. If I can help in any way, I <sup>13</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ . Just ask.

**Ella** Thank you. That's really kind. Are you studying here at the university?

**Eamon** I <sup>14</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ . I studied Italian for a year but now I'm teaching English.

**Ella** You mean Irish!

**Eamon** Come on! My accent isn't that strong.

**Ella** I can't speak much Italian – I wish I <sup>15</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ . I'm here to work for an English company but I'm hoping to pick up the language if I <sup>16</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ .

**Eamon** I'm sure you <sup>17</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ in no time. And I could give you lessons if you like.

**Ella** <sup>18</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ you? That'd be fantastic.


**Eamon** No problem, I'd really like to. And I'll introduce you to the other two flatmates. They're from the US and Australia. We're quite a mixed bunch!

## 2 Reduced infinitives

- 1 Complete B's responses with the verbs in the box. Use the correct tense and a reduced infinitive.

persuade offer try used to not be able to not be allowed

- 1 A Who did you get to help you fix your computer?  
B No one helped. Ben offered to , but in the end I did it myself.
- 2 A I thought you didn't want to come out this evening?  
B I didn't, but Paula \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ .
- 3 A Don't you usually spend the summer by the sea?  
B Well, we \_\_\_\_\_ , but not since the kids grew up.
- 4 A Don't you want another ice cream?  
B Yes, but we can't have one. Mummy says we \_\_\_\_\_ .
- 5 A You'll have to be at the airport at 6 a.m. Why don't you get a later flight?  
B We \_\_\_\_\_ , but they were all fully booked.
- 6 A You're not going to the conference in Birmingham, are you?  
B No, I'm out of the country so I \_\_\_\_\_ .

- 2  Listen and read about the British diplomat. Who has the 'last laugh'?

### A BRITISH DIPLOMAT TELLS A JOKE IN JAPAN

A British diplomat was working in Japan and sometimes he had to give lectures as part of his job. He had given this lecture many times, and he always began it with a joke, but the audience never laughed. He didn't speak any Japanese (you don't have to speak a foreign language to be a British diplomat), so he thought that the lack of laughter was because his translator didn't translate the joke very well. He decided that he ought to get a new translator.

He found an excellent one who was bilingual in Japanese and English, and he told him that he'd pay him a large fee as long as he translated the opening joke really well.

The diplomat gave his lecture and to his delight everyone in the audience laughed loudly at the joke. He congratulated his new translator profusely on doing such a good job and paid him well. Little did he know that this is what the translator actually said in Japanese:

“OK, the diplomat is beginning his lecture. As usual with lectures by British speakers, he's beginning with a joke. I don't know why. The jokes are always really stupid, and usually say something ridiculous about Japanese people. Fortunately, you don't have to listen to this joke because I'm not going to translate it. But you mustn't look bored, so start smiling now ... and to be polite, you must laugh when he's finished, so get ready to laugh when I tell you. 1, 2, 3 ... laugh NOW!”



- 3 Complete the sentences with a verb in the correct tense and a reduced infinitive.

have not have learn expect pretend tell try

- 1 A Why did the diplomat give a lecture?  
B Because he \_\_\_\_\_ . It was part of his job.
- 2 He didn't speak any Japanese because he'd never \_\_\_\_\_ .
- 3 British diplomats don't always speak a foreign language; they \_\_\_\_\_ .
- 4 A Didn't the first translator translate the joke well?  
B Well, he \_\_\_\_\_ but the audience didn't get it.
- 5 A Was the businessman surprised when the audience didn't laugh at his joke?  
B Yes, he was. He \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_ , but they didn't.
- 6 A Did the new translator translate the joke better?  
B He didn't translate it at all, he just \_\_\_\_\_ .
- 7 A Why did the audience laugh in the end?  
B Because the translator \_\_\_\_\_ them when \_\_\_\_\_ .

# Vocabulary

## 3 Synonyms in context

- 1 Synonyms are often used to avoid repetition. Which synonym was used to avoid this repetition in the story about the British diplomat?

The jokes are always really **stupid** and usually say something **stupid** about Japanese people.

- 2 Complete the sentences with the synonyms, or near synonyms, in *italics*. Sometimes you need to change the form.

### friend

*mate colleague companion*

- 1 Tom and I have been best \_\_\_\_\_ ever since we were at school together.
- 2 We spent the year after school touring all round the US together. He made an excellent travelling \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 We now work for the same firm so we're \_\_\_\_\_ as well as friends.

### love

*adore fancy worship fall for*

- 4 He absolutely \_\_\_\_\_ her. It was love at first sight. He just \_\_\_\_\_ the ground she walks on.
- 5 I can't believe it – Matt's just asked me out. You know that I \_\_\_\_\_ him for ages!
- 6 From the moment we met I just knew. I \_\_\_\_\_ him straight away.

### talk

*chat gossip have a word let s.o. know*

- 7 No, I'm not telling you how we broke up. You'll only \_\_\_\_\_ about it to all your friends – you always do.
- 8 I \_\_\_\_\_ with my boss about that pay rise and it's a 'maybe'. I \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ as soon as I hear.
- 9 There's nothing like \_\_\_\_\_ to old friends – we can talk for hours about anything and everything.

### laugh

*chuckle giggle guffaw snigger*

- 10 Why \_\_\_\_\_ you little girls \_\_\_\_\_? What's so funny about your big sister having a boyfriend?
- 11 He's a really unpleasant bloke. He's mean to people and then he \_\_\_\_\_ at their discomfort.
- 12 Uncle Robert's laugh is big, like the man. He \_\_\_\_\_ – you can hear him from miles away.
- 13 Sue Townsend's books are really funny. I was reading one on the train and couldn't help \_\_\_\_\_ to myself.

### travel

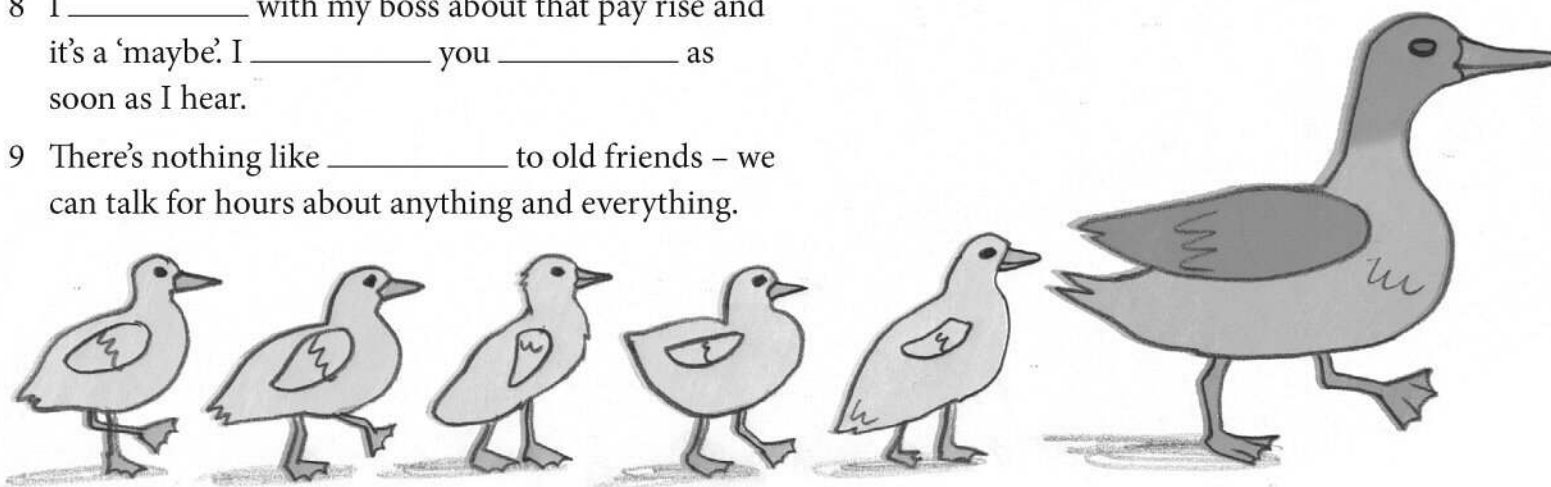
*journey trip voyage cruise*

- 14 Sorry we're late – the \_\_\_\_\_ took much longer than we expected.
- 15 My parents went on a two-week \_\_\_\_\_ up the Norwegian fjords. They said it was wonderful.
- 16 They're taking the whole class on a coach \_\_\_\_\_ to London for the day.
- 17 There were a great many \_\_\_\_\_ of discovery during the reign of Queen Elizabeth I.

### walk

*dawdle stagger stride waddle*

- 18 Slow down! I can't keep up with you when you \_\_\_\_\_ along like that.
- 19 Look at that lot \_\_\_\_\_ out of the pub. They've either been celebrating their team's win or drowning their sorrows.
- 20 Come on you two! Stop \_\_\_\_\_. We need to get a move on.
- 21 Ducks don't walk; they \_\_\_\_\_ from side to side.




# Reading

## 4 Two ways of travelling

- 1 Read about the writer Elizabeth Gilbert. Is her book, *Committed*, fictitious or autobiographical?



**Elizabeth M. Gilbert** is an American journalist, novelist, and travel writer. In her fifth book, *Committed*, Liz describes her decision to marry a Brazilian man named Felipe whom she met in Indonesia. They go travelling together in south-east Asia while waiting for permission for Felipe to apply for immigration to the US. The travelling reveals differences between them.

- 2  Read and listen to the extract about Liz and Felipe's travels. Are these statements true (✓) or false (✗)? Correct the false ones.

- 1 The first paragraph is mainly about Felipe's approach to travelling.
- 2 Felipe and Liz didn't start travelling until late in life.
- 3 They're incompatible because only one of them enjoys travelling.
- 4 Felipe's 'secret weapon' is his ability to fit in wherever he goes.
- 5 He easily picks up foreign languages.
- 6 Neither of them minds the various discomforts of travel.
- 7 Felipe wanted to stay in northern Laos because it was cheap.
- 8 Liz never wants to settle down and be a home bird.



- 3 Answer the questions.

- 1 Both Liz and Felipe might say 'I'll happily spend the rest of my life right here.' Where is 'here' for each of them? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Who is 'The best traveler and the worst'? In what ways? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Liz says 'I'm not like that though.' What is she like as a traveller? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 What does Liz mean by 'Travel that wasn't even travel'? \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Why is Felipe like a flying fish in a small bucket of water and Liz like a migratory bird? \_\_\_\_\_

- 4 Find words in the text that are synonymous with the words in *italics*.

- 1 Felipe is able to *make a home* and establish a *comfortingly* familiar routine for himself wherever he goes.
- 2 He has a particular way of travelling which *makes him better than anybody else*.
- 3 Liz believes she is an *extremely tolerant* person who is *extremely interested in seeing new things* when she travels.
- 4 She's good at putting up with the *little difficulties that arise* along the way.
- 5 Felipe is able to adapt *straightaway* to somewhere *totally new* if he likes it.
- 6 Liz *turned white* at the thought of staying *forever* in an unfamiliar place.
- 7 She finally realized that her attitude to travel was more *superficial* than Felipe's.

# Incompatible Travelers

## ***'The best traveler and the worst.'***

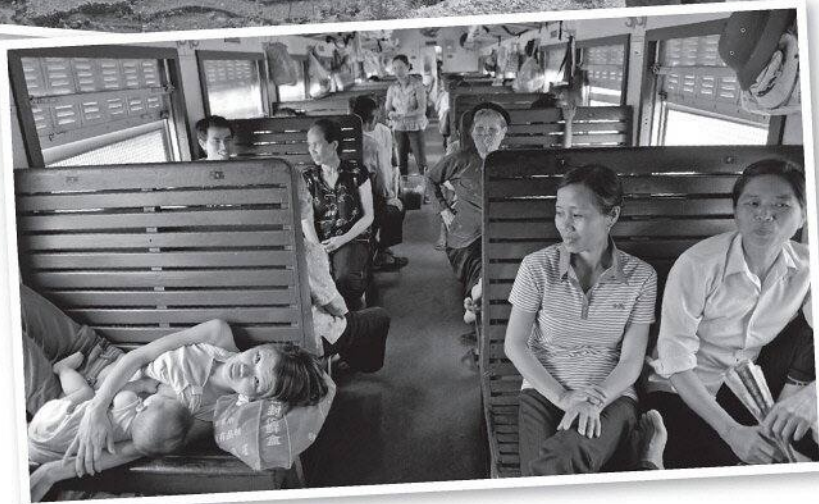
The last few months had brought to my attention an important incompatibility between us – one that I'd never noticed before. For a pair of lifelong \*travelers, Felipe and I actually travel very differently. The reality about Felipe is that he's both the best traveler I've ever met and by far the worst. He hates strange bathrooms and dirty restaurants and uncomfortable trains and foreign beds. Given a choice, he will always select a lifestyle of routine, familiarity, and reassuringly boring everyday practices. All of which might make you assume that the man is not fit to be a traveler at all. But you would be wrong to assume that, for here is Felipe's traveling gift, his superpower, the secret weapon that renders him peerless. He can create a familiar habitat of reassuringly boring everyday practices for himself *anyplace*, if you just let him stay in one spot. He can assimilate absolutely anywhere on the planet in the space of about three days, and then he's capable of staying put in that place for the next decade or so without complaint. This is why Felipe has been able to live all over the world. Not merely travel, but *live*. Over the years he has folded himself into societies from South America to Europe, from the Middle East to the South Pacific. He arrives somewhere utterly new, decides he likes the place, moves right in, learns the language, and instantly becomes a local.

## ***'I'm not like that, though.'***

Whereas Felipe can find a corner anywhere in the world and settle down for good, I can't. I'm much more restless than he is. My restlessness makes me a far better day-to-day traveler than he will ever be. I am infinitely curious and almost infinitely patient with mishaps and minor disasters. So I can go anywhere on the planet – that's not a problem. The problem is I just can't live anywhere on the planet. I'd realized this only a few weeks earlier, back in northern Laos, when Felipe had woken up one lovely morning in Luang Prabang and said, 'Darling, let's stay here.'

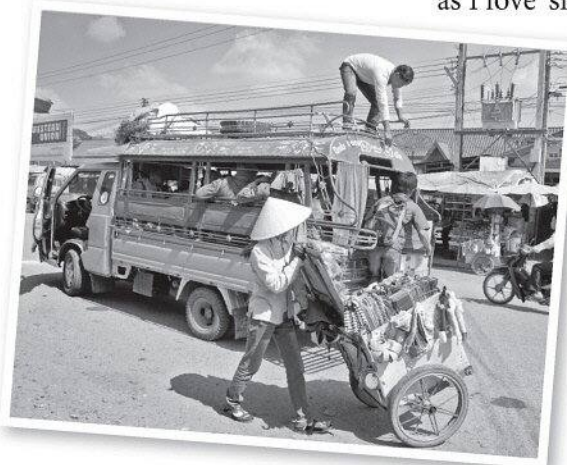
'Sure,' I'd said. 'We can stay here for a few more days if you want.'

'No, I mean let's *move* here. Let's forget about me immigrating to America. It's too much trouble. This is a wonderful town. I like the feeling of it. It reminds me of Brazil thirty years ago. It wouldn't take much money or effort for us to run a little hotel or shop here, rent an apartment, settle in ... ?' In reaction, I had only blanched. He was serious. He would just do that. He would just up and move to northern Laos indefinitely and build a new life there. But I can't.



## ***'Travel that wasn't even travel.'***



What Felipe was proposing was travel at a level I could not reach – travel that wasn't even travel anymore, but rather a willingness to be ingested indefinitely by an unfamiliar place. I wasn't up for it. My traveling, as I understood then for the first time, was far more dilettantish than I had ever realized. As much as I love 'snacking' on the world, when it comes time to settle down – to really settle down – I wanted to live at home, in my own country, in my own language, near my own family, and in the company of people who think and believe the same things that I think and believe. This basically limits me to a small region of Planet Earth consisting of southern New York State, the more rural sections of central New Jersey, north-western Connecticut, and bits of Eastern Pennsylvania. Quite a scanty habitat for a bird who claims to be migratory. Felipe, on the other hand – my flying fish – has no such domestic limitations. A small bucket of water anywhere in the world will do him just fine.



\*Note the American spelling is *traveler*, whilst the British spelling is *traveller*.

## Listening

### 5 A marriage of two nationalities


- 1  Martine and Jaap are a married couple. Listen to the story of how they met. What nationality are they? Where did they meet?
- 2 Do these statements refer to Jaap or Martine? Write **J** or **M**.
  - 1 \_\_\_ was a physics teacher.
  - 2 \_\_\_ has a friend called Remi.
  - 3 \_\_\_ taught pottery skills.
  - 4 \_\_\_'s pottery improved.
  - 5 \_\_\_ throws the pieces.
  - 6 \_\_\_ hand paints the pottery.
- 3 Choose the correct alternative to make true sentences about the text.
  - 1 Jaap was *working in/travelling around* Provence 22 years ago.
  - 2 He walked up Mont Ventoux *alone/with a friend*.
  - 3 Martine likes to *wake up/walk up* to see the mountain view.
  - 4 She loves seeing the *seasonal changes/cascading springs*.
  - 5 Jaap fell in love with Martine *gradually/instantly*.
  - 6 Martine says Jaap easily went from physics to pottery because he is naturally *scientific/creative*.
- 4  Listen again. What do Martine and Jaap use these adjectives to describe?
 

1 irresistible	4 exhausted
2 wonderful	5 poor
3 entrancing	6 creative



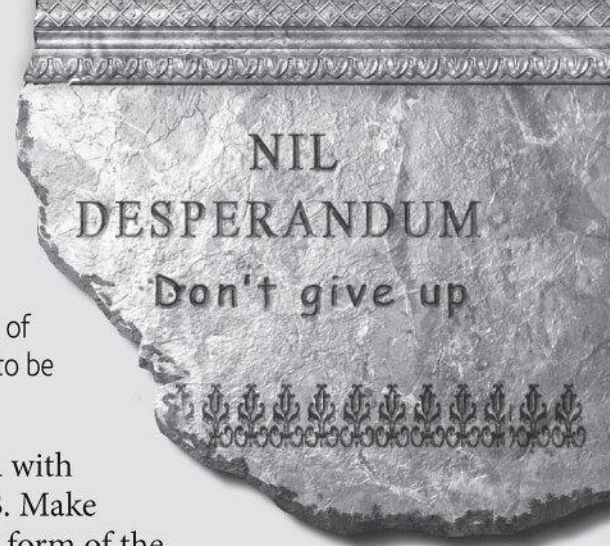
## Phrasal verbs

### 6 Phrasal verbs and their Latin-based synonyms

-  Many phrasal verbs have a synonym of Latin origin. The phrasal verb tends to be more informal than the Latin verb.
- 1 Match the phrasal verbs in **A** with the verbs of Latin origin in **B**. Make any necessary changes to the form of the verbs in **B**.

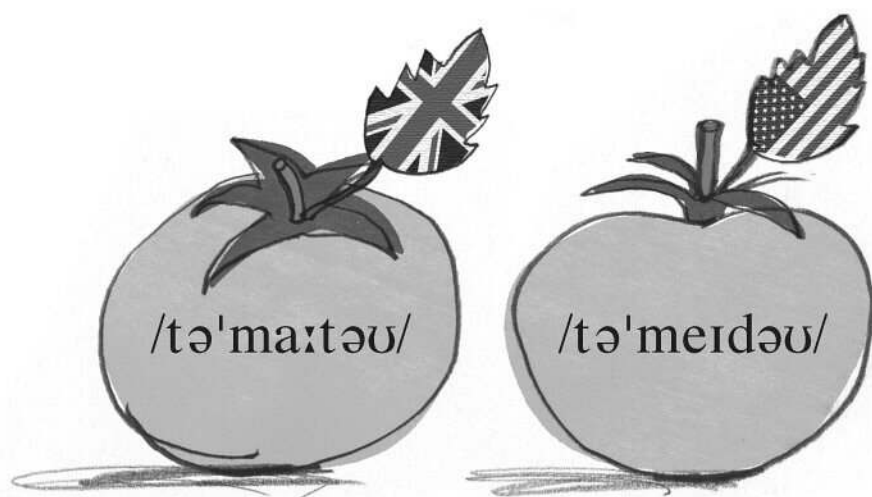
A	B
1 Liz can <b>put up with</b> mishaps when she travels. 2 Felipe easily <b>takes in</b> local culture and learns the language. 3 Don't be <b>taken in</b> by adverts offering cheap loans. 4 The service was poor, but the quality of the food more than <b>made up for</b> it. 5 Business has been bad but it's <b>picking up</b> now. 6 He says he's got tummy ache, but he's just <b>putting it on</b> to avoid going to school. 7 The government has been criticized for <b>doing away with</b> some border controls. 8 I had to have all my wisdom teeth <b>taken out</b> .	a improve b compensate for c deceive d assimilate e tolerate f abolish g extract h pretend

- 2 Read the sentences and decide whether they are more formal or informal. Underline the more appropriate verb.
  - 1 Can you help me *inflate/blow up* these balloons for the party?
  - 2 Little Johnny ate six slices of chocolate cake. No wonder he *vomited/threw up* all over the carpet.
  - 3 The defendant was charged with *assaulting/beating up* a policeman.
  - 4 Our soldiers were totally outnumbered – they had no choice but to *surrender/give in* to the enemy.
  - 5 Stop letting everyone bully you! It's time you *defended/stuck up for* yourself!
  - 6 Mum, my teacher *reprimanded me/told me off* for chewing gum in class.
  - 7 This 17th century stately home has been painstakingly *restored/done up* by its current owners.
  - 8 Our neighbour's a real snob. *Maintaining/Keeping up* appearances is all that's important to her.



# Pronunciation

## 7 British and American English



- 1 Listen to these words with first a British and then an American accent. What are the differences?

a tomato      c ham      e agile      g civilization  
b stop      d car      f new      h centre

- 2 Look at 1–8 in the guide to different pronunciations in British English (BE) and American English (AE). Which of the words in exercise 1 do they refer to?

1 /ɹ/ is stronger in AE, and is never dropped, even in final position.

2 In AE, the /t/ in BE is often dropped after an 'n'.

3 /t/ between vowels in BE becomes /d/ in AE.

4 /ɒ/ in BE becomes /ɑː/ in AE.

5 /aɪ/ in BE in words ending -ization changes to /ə/ in AE.

6 Before /uː/, the /j/ that comes after /n/, /t/, and /d/ in BE is not used in AE.

7 /æ/ in BE can become more like /eə/ in AE.

8 /aɪl/ at the end of words in BE becomes /əl/ in AE.

- 3 Listen to words from exercise 1. Are they pronounced with an British (BE) or American (AE) accent?

1 AE      3          5          7      
2          4          6          8    

- 4 The word stress in American English pronunciation is sometimes different from British English. Listen and underline the syllable with the main stress in these words. Then listen again and repeat.

British English	American English
1 adult	adult
2 brochure	brochure
3 laboratory	laboratory
4 enquiry	enquiry
5 ballet	ballet
6 detail	detail
7 donate	donate
8 debut	debut

- 5 Say these words aloud with British English pronunciation. Then listen and check.

route	vase	leisure	vaccine
vitamin	patent	herb	clerk

- 6 Can you guess how to say the words in exercise 5 with American English pronunciation? Listen and check.

- 7 Read these sentences aloud, first as British and then as American English.

- I have an enquiry about the route to the adult leisure park in the city centre.
- This laboratory has the patent for the new vaccine that cures tuberculosis.
- The brochure said herbs and tomatoes are full of vitamins, unlike coffee.
- Our students donate to organizations that are hostile to globalization.

- Listen and check.

# 6

- Adding emphasis
- Negative inversion
- ever for emphasis
- Verbs to nouns
- Phrasal nouns
- Adding emphasis with stress

## Fruits of war

I dream of giving birth to a child who will ask, 'Mother, what was war?'

Eve Merriam (1916–1992)  
Poet and writer

That men do not learn very much from the lessons of history is the most important of all the lessons of history.

Aldous Huxley (1894–1963)  
Writer

## Ways of adding emphasis

### 1 Structures which add emphasis

- Base sentence:** History lessons focus mainly on wars.  
*What* history lessons *do* focus mainly on wars.  
*The thing* history lessons *do* focus mainly on wars.  
*Something* history lessons *do* focus mainly on wars.
- Base sentence:** We learned mainly about wars in our history lessons.  
*What* we *did* in our history lessons was learn mainly about wars.  
*It was* mainly wars that we learned about in our history lessons.
- Base sentences:** The war started in Ruritania. The Ruritarians started it.  
*Ruritania was where* the war started.  
*It was* the Ruritarians *who* started it.
- Emphatic do/does/did.**  
*I do* love you, I really *do*.

### 1 Complete the sentences to emphasize the words in *italics*.

- We doubt the *president's sincerity*.  
What we doubt is the president's sincerity.
- He should *avoid antagonizing* the press.  
The thing \_\_\_\_\_.
- The ambassador* antagonizes the press.  
It \_\_\_\_\_.
- The media *exaggerated* his role in the coup.  
What \_\_\_\_\_.
- Nobody likes *being criticized*.  
Something \_\_\_\_\_.
- The lies she wrote* really annoyed me.  
It \_\_\_\_\_.



- She used to work in *Beirut*.  
Beirut \_\_\_\_\_.
- You're wrong. I *know* why she left Beirut.  
You're wrong. I \_\_\_\_\_.

- 2 Read conversations **A** and complete conversations **B**, adding emphasis as naturally as possible. There is often more than one possibility.

### 1 Conversation A

- A** Ben's very happy with his move to Edinburgh.  
**B** That's good. He works for Barclays Bank, doesn't he?  
**A** Well, he used to, but not any more. He works for the Bank of Scotland now.  
**B** I'd like to know why he left Barclays. He earned good money there.  
**A** Yeah, he liked the pay, but the job was too stressful.

### Conversation B

- A** Ben's very happy with his move to Edinburgh.  
**B** That's good. <sup>1</sup> It's Barclays Bank he works for, isn't it?  
**A** Well, he used to, but not any more.  
<sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ .  
**B** <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ . He earned good money there.  
**A** Yeah, <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ , but the job was too stressful.

### 2 Conversation A

- A** London's heaving with tourists at the moment.  
**B** I know, I think they come to see the historic buildings.  
**A** Yeah, there's that, but the theatre is also very popular. Most shows are full.  
**B** You're right, the theatre really boosts London's economy.  
**A** But a lot of tourists don't realize that the rest of the country is not like London.  
**B** Yes, they don't often explore further afield. Personally, in summer I like to get out of the city.

### Conversation B

- A** London's heaving with tourists at the moment.  
**B** I know, I think <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ .  
**A** Yeah, there's that, but <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ . Most shows are full.  
**B** You're right, <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ .  
**A** But <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ the rest of the country isn't like London.  
**B** Yes, they don't often explore further afield. Personally, in summer <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ .

 Listen and compare answers.

## 2 Negative inversion

Rewrite the sentences using a word or phrase from the box to make them more emphatic.

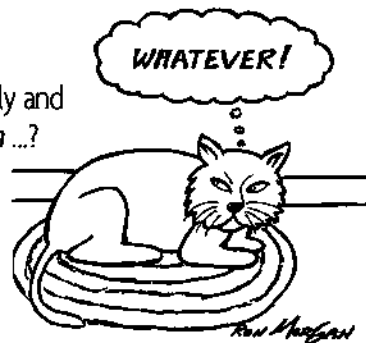
In no way	Little	Never before	Never again	No sooner ... than
Nothing	Not until	Nowhere	Seldom	Not only ... (but) also

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>1 I won't ever allow myself to be deceived by him again.<br/>_____</p> <p>2 One rarely finds someone with such integrity as Harold. _____</p> <p>3 He loves counting all his money more than anything.<br/>_____</p> <p>4 He little suspected what she was up to.<br/>_____</p> <p>5 Nobody has ever spoken to me like that!<br/>_____</p> | <p>6 You won't find a kinder man anywhere.<br/>_____</p> <p>7 She was rude <i>and</i> she was really unkind.<br/>_____</p> <p>8 Her reaction couldn't possibly be described as sympathetic. _____</p> <p>9 As soon as one war ended the Ruritians started another one. _____</p> <p>10 He didn't realize the error of his ways until she threatened to leave him. _____</p> |
|---|---|

### 3 The use of *-ever* for emphasis

❗ *What-, who-, which-, when-, where- and how- + ever* can be used to express:

- a It doesn't matter *what/who/which*, etc.  
*We'll go **whatever** the weather.*
- b Indifference or uncertainty  
*I'll call you later, **whenever** I get the time.*
- c In questions they can express surprise.  
***Whatever** does it mean?*  
***Whoever** is that with your sister?*
- d Surprise can be expressed informally and more emphatically with ... *on earth* ...?  
*How **on earth** did you do that?*



1 Mark these sentences **a**, **b**, **c**, or **d** according to the rules above.

- 1 **However** did you get here so quickly? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Well, I love him **whatever** you might think! \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Choose **whichever** dress you want, I don't care.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 **Who on earth** told you that? \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 'You're not to talk to your mother like that!' 'Whatever!' \_\_\_\_\_

2 Complete these sentences.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ hard I try, I can never remember people's names.
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ you go in life and \_\_\_\_\_ you do you, never forget your roots.
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ possible we've tried to comply with his wishes.
- 4 Could \_\_\_\_\_ goes to bed last turn all the lights off?
- 5 It could be tomorrow or the next day. I'm not sure, but \_\_\_\_\_ I can, I'll call.
- 6 I'm amazed. \_\_\_\_\_ would have thought she'd want to study engineering?
- 7 \_\_\_\_\_ much money I earn, it never seems enough to live on.
- 8 There are three cakes left. Take \_\_\_\_\_ you want.

### Reading

#### 4 Land Girls

1 During WWII there was an organization called the Women's Land Army (WLA). Read the lyrics of their song. Why was the WLA created?

2 Read the rest of the article quite quickly. Match each paragraph with its short summary.

- a The main requirements of the job. \_\_\_\_\_
- b The method of engaging WLA volunteers and the reasons for joining. \_\_\_\_\_
- c Some experiences of the volunteers. \_\_\_\_\_
- d The main purpose of the WLA and the initial reaction to it. \_\_\_\_\_
- e The outcome of the organization. \_\_\_\_\_
- f Reasons for the WLA. \_\_\_\_\_

3 🎧 Read and listen to the article again. What do these numbers and dates represent in the text?

- |               |             |
|---------------|-------------|
| 1 1 June 1939 | 5 48 and 50 |
| 2 17          | 6 100,000   |
| 3 26          | 7 1950      |
| 4 4           |             |

4 Answer the questions.

1 Why wasn't there a sufficient workforce in the British countryside at the outbreak of WWII?

\_\_\_\_\_

2 What was the initial reaction of farmers to the WLA?

\_\_\_\_\_

3 How did they react when the WLA finally ended?

\_\_\_\_\_

4 Why did many young women pretend to be older?

\_\_\_\_\_

5 In what ways did the glamorous posters belie the truth?

\_\_\_\_\_

6 How much training did they receive?

\_\_\_\_\_

7 What injustices did they experience?

\_\_\_\_\_

8 What were more positive experiences?

\_\_\_\_\_

# LAND GIRLS

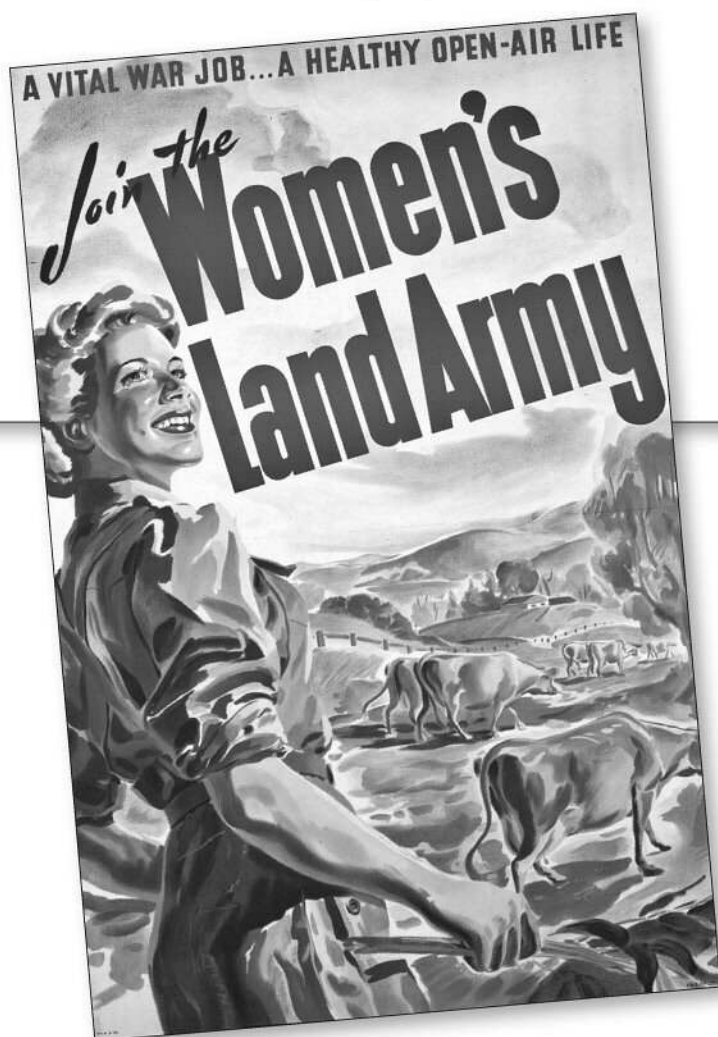
‘Back to the land, we must all lend a hand,  
To the farms and the fields we must go,  
There’s a job to be done,  
Though we can’t fire a gun,  
We can still do our bit with the hoe.’



1 In 1939, when the Second World War was looming, the British government recognized that the country should grow its own food to avoid being reliant on imports. However, there was a shortage of agricultural workers in the countryside. For decades, young men had been leaving for more profitable work in factories. Then, with many men leaving to join the armed forces, there was a desperate need for labour.

2 Therefore on 1 June 1939, the Women’s Land Army was set up by the government. The WLA was expected to replace men in the fields, forests, and livestock sheds for the duration of the war. Unfortunately, the farming community treated the whole idea with suspicion and scorn. Working in the countryside was considered no place for a decent young woman. Furthermore, city girls would simply not be up to the job.

3 Nonetheless, glamorous posters were issued advertising a wonderfully healthy way of life in the country, and the recruitment process got underway. Thousands of girls were interviewed to see if they were suitable, but in reality it wasn’t hard to get into the WLA. The minimum age was 17, but many young women lied about their age, desperate to escape city poverty. All ‘Land Girls’ were given a cursory medical, before being issued with work clothes for the fields. They were also given a heavy, uncomfortable brown ‘uniform’ that they were to wear while ‘off-duty’. They were to earn just 26 shillings a week, far less than their male counterparts.



4 Starting work in the country was a shock for the new recruits from the city, many of whom had never seen a field or a cow. Not only were there new skills to acquire with only rudimentary training, but the work was also very physical. Their tasks were endless: they learned to operate heavy farm machinery, they planted and harvested wheat and vegetables, cleared fields, picked fruit, milked and herded cows, felled trees, and caught rats. The day often started at 4 a.m. and the hours were long. Land Girls were expected to work a 48-hour week in winter and 50 hours in the summer, but most worked much longer than this, especially at harvest time.

5 The girls’ circumstances differed, depending on where they were sent and what the conditions were like. Some stayed on individual farms and could be quite lonely. Others stayed in large hostels in vacant country houses or schools, and travelled to different farms on bikes. But they were initially regarded with indifference or even hostility by the farming community. Some girls even complained that the Italian prisoners of war who were working the land were treated better than them and given more food! However, many came to love their new way of life in the country with its relative freedom, and made lifelong friends.


6 By the end of the war, the 100,000 WLA volunteers had carried out their duties with such dedication, skill, and enthusiasm, that the farmers were the first to complain when the organization was eventually disbanded in 1950. The role of women in the countryside and everywhere else was changed forever.

5 Match the highlighted words in the text with these definitions.

- 1 a farming or gardening tool hoe
- 2 farm animals
- 3 a feeling of contempt and ridicule
- 4 (an ominous event) was about to happen
- 5 superficial and short
- 6 lack of interest and concern
- 7 brought a group or organization to an end
- 8 equivalents
- 9 cut down
- 10 basic and incomplete

# Listening


## 5 Pearl McGuigan – Land Girl

- 1  Listen to an interview with a woman who was a member of the WLA during WWII. Complete the fact file about her.


Name: Pearl McGuigan  
Year joined the WLA: \_\_\_\_\_  
Age on joining the WLA: \_\_\_\_\_  
Place of birth: \_\_\_\_\_  
Place of work: \_\_\_\_\_ in Hertfordshire  
Length of service: \_\_\_\_\_ years  
Subsequent career: \_\_\_\_\_  
Age at interview: \_\_\_\_\_

Women's Land Army



- 2  Listen again. Read the questions. *Three* answers are correct – tick (✓) them and put a cross (X) next to the incorrect one.

- 1 Why did Pearl volunteer?
  - a She wanted to leave home.
  - b She was desperate to earn some money.
  - c She was encouraged by the WLA recruitment drive.
  - d She wanted to play a useful role during the war.
- 2 What were her first impressions of her new life?
  - a She felt homesick.
  - b She was thrilled to be in the countryside.
  - c She enjoyed being with so many other girls.
  - d She didn't mind sharing.
- 3 How did she find the work?
  - a She found it easier than expected.
  - b She found that it gave her a big appetite.
  - c It was extremely tough physically.
  - d She enjoyed the company of the others she was working with.
- 4 What did she do for fun?
  - a She harvested the fields.
  - b She would hitch a lift into town with her girlfriends.
  - c She would go to dance in town with the others.
  - d They sometimes met and went out with the GIs.
- 5 What effect did the WLA have on Pearl and her friends?
  - a Pearl found that the experience gave her confidence.
  - b Some girls wished they hadn't joined.
  - c They made lifelong friendships.
  - d Some remained in agriculture after the war.

- 3  Listen again carefully. Complete the sentences with the exact words you hear Pearl say.

- 1 I had been a \_\_\_\_\_ (*often ill*) child and I didn't think I would be accepted.
- 2 The hostel was in the \_\_\_\_\_ (*a very isolated place*) and the sight of all the empty green land around me made me feel \_\_\_\_\_ (*a bit nauseous*).
- 3 All that fresh air and hard labour made you \_\_\_\_\_ (*extremely hungry*) – we were \_\_\_\_\_ (*always*) thinking of food, and there never seemed \_\_\_\_\_ (*quite enough*).
- 4 There was a huge field covered with weeds and \_\_\_\_\_ (*prickly weeds*) almost as tall as ourselves, and we were told to \_\_\_\_\_ (*remove the weeds from*) it.
- 5 One day we decided we'd \_\_\_\_\_ (*we were extremely fed up with the situation*) and refused \_\_\_\_\_ (*were completely unwilling*) to go.
- 6 Harvest time was the \_\_\_\_\_ (*hardest*), and the most dangerous. You had to be really careful with all the big machinery, especially when you were already \_\_\_\_\_ (*totally exhausted*).
- 7 My time in the WLA was a huge \_\_\_\_\_ to my \_\_\_\_\_ (*really good for my self-confidence*).
- 8 I actually joined the RAF at the \_\_\_\_\_ (*end*) of the war in 1945.

# Vocabulary

## 6 Verbs to nouns

1 Complete the chart. Use a dictionary if necessary.

VERB	NOUN
1 <u>conquer</u>	conquest
2 destroy	_____
3 _____	threat
4 attack	_____
5 _____	assassination
6 revolt	_____
7 _____	wound
8 survive	_____
9 _____	invasion
10 demolish	_____
11 _____	pacifist
12 complain	_____
13 _____	terrorist
14 lose	_____
15 _____	injury

2 Complete the sentences with a **verb** (in the right form) or a **noun** from the chart.

- The Roman \_\_\_\_\_ of Britain was about 43 AD under Emperor Claudius. However, prior to this Julius Caesar \_\_\_\_\_ already \_\_\_\_\_ the country twice in 55 BC and 54 BC.
- The French \_\_\_\_\_ started in Paris in July 1789 when an angry mob \_\_\_\_\_ the Bastille.
- My great-grandfather \_\_\_\_\_ badly \_\_\_\_\_ in WWII. He finally died of his \_\_\_\_\_ in 1945.
- My great-grandma never got over the \_\_\_\_\_ of her husband, but she brought up her family alone without any \_\_\_\_\_.
- She can remember the Blitz in London – she saw the \_\_\_\_\_ of a number of houses in her street. Her house survived, but later had to \_\_\_\_\_ because it was unsafe.
- My mum can remember exactly what she was doing when President Kennedy \_\_\_\_\_ in 1963. Doctors fought hard for his \_\_\_\_\_ but failed.
- \_\_\_\_\_ belonging to extreme groups pose a major \_\_\_\_\_ to our world today.
- My dad says sometimes it's brave not to fight. Many \_\_\_\_\_ in WWI had to face the wrath of society.


## Phrasal nouns

### 7 Compound nouns formed with prepositions

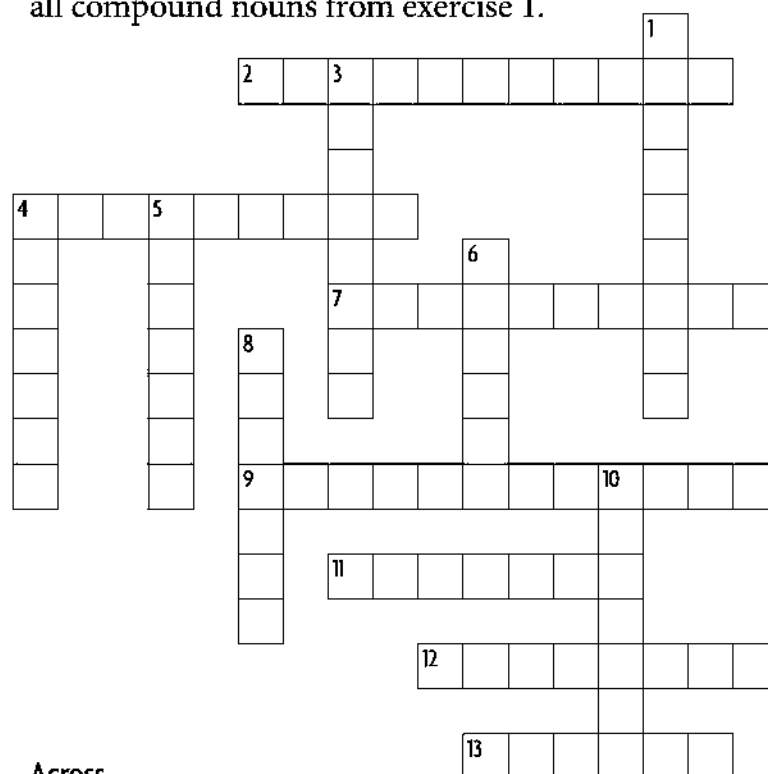
1 Match words in **A** and **B** to make **compound nouns**. Sometimes more than one is possible.

<b>A</b>	under	over	fall	spin	
	break	out	down	set	
	up	pile	hang	off	
<b>B</b>	wear	over	out	spring	all
	shot	come	off	through	up
	back	patient	ground	pour	

**underwear**

 Listen and compare.

2 Complete the crossword. The answers to the clues are all compound nouns from exercise 1.



**Across**

- The Metro in London is called the ...
- Parents often have problems with their teenage ...
- I didn't stay overnight in hospital. I was an ...
- There was a significant ... in the peace talks.
- After a nuclear explosion the ... can last for many years.
- I'll never drink again. It's the worst ... I've ever had.
- There was a terrible ... on the motorway, involving six cars and a lorry.

**Down**

- My white ... went grey in the wash.
- We got soaked in that sudden ...
- I have to wear an ... when I work in the garage. It's dirty work.
- The movie is just a ... from the original TV programme.
- The ... of all his troubles was that he emigrated.
- There's been such a ... in the negotiations. We don't know where we go from here.
- What was the ... of those talks?


# Pronunciation


## 8 Adding emphasis with stress

- 1 Read the conversation aloud to yourself. Mark the *main* stressed words in **B**'s replies.


### At the cinema

A That was a fantastic film, wasn't it?  
B You're kidding. I thought it was awful.  
A But the special effects were amazing.  
B It was all special effects and no story.  
A I suppose the plot was a bit confusing.  
B You're telling me.  
A It wasn't that bad.  
B It was. I didn't understand a word.  
A I loved the car chases.  
B I didn't know who was chasing who or why.  
A Who or why doesn't matter. It's the spectacle that counts.  
B Not to me. What I need is a recognizable plot.  
A It was exciting.  
B If you call noise and violence exciting.  
A Well, I'm going to recommend it to James.  
B I wouldn't recommend it to anyone.  
A It's his kind of film.  
B Well, you know him better than I do.  
A OK, next time you choose the movie.  
B If there is a next time.



-  Listen, check, and repeat.
- 2 Match a question or statement in **A** with a response in **B**, according to the stress pattern. The stressed words are in *italics*.

A	B
1 What kind of films do you like?	a I like historical <i>films</i> .
2 Why do you watch this rubbish?	b I like <i>historical</i> films.
3 You like historical novels, don't you?	c I <i>like</i> historical films.
4 What nationality is she?	d I <i>thought</i> she was German.
5 Tom said she was Swiss.	e I thought she was <i>German</i> .
6 Frank said she was German.	f I thought she was <i>German</i> .
7 I've just been working in Rome.	g I'm going to work in <i>Rome</i> .
8 I hear you're going to work in Milan!	h I'm <i>going</i> to work in Rome.
9 So you've been working in Rome!	i I'm going to work in <i>Rome</i> .
10 Sue believed his every word.	j I could tell he was <i>lying</i> .
11 What do you think of what they said?	k I could tell he was <i>lying</i> .
12 What did you think of what he said?	l I could tell <i>he</i> was lying.

-  Listen and check.

## Fast and Furious



Starring **Vin Diesel**

# 7

Real and unreal tense usage • *would* or *had*? • Mixed conditionals  
• Synonyms: *happy* and *sad* • Phrasal verbs: *on* or *off* • Linking

## Lighten up!

Happiness is a perfume you  
cannot pour on others without  
getting some on yourself.

Ralph Waldo Emerson (1803–1882)  
Poet

I do not think we have  
a “right” to happiness. If  
happiness happens, say thanks.

Marlene Dietrich (1901–1992)  
Actress and singer

## Real and unreal tense usage

### 1 Real or hypothetical?

Complete the second lines so that they correspond to the real or hypothetical situations in the first ones. Sometimes more than one tense is possible.

- I'm not enjoying this book on how to be happy.  
I wish I was enjoying this book on how to be happy.
- If only I hadn't worried so much when I was young.  
I worried too much when I was young.
- You're stubborn and you never listen to my advice.  
I wish \_\_\_\_\_.
- Imagine if this room had been painted yellow as was suggested!  
Luckily this room \_\_\_\_\_.
- If only he'd admit he was wrong sometimes.  
He \_\_\_\_\_.
- I wish we'd been working when the boss popped in.  
Unfortunately, \_\_\_\_\_.
- He's not an expert really and hasn't got a degree in linguistics.  
He talks as if \_\_\_\_\_.
- She couldn't speak English and misunderstood me.  
Suppose she \_\_\_\_\_?
- I didn't really want Sally to come, but she did.  
I'd rather \_\_\_\_\_.
- It's a shame he didn't have to go to prison and pay for his crimes.  
I wish \_\_\_\_\_.



### 2 *would* or *had*?

Decide whether the 'd contractions in the sentences are short forms of *would* or *had*. Then decide whether the examples of *would* express past habit, future in the past, or an unreal situation.

- She told me she'd be late. would – future in the past
- If only you'd told me! \_\_\_\_\_
- He'd often stare out of the window during meetings.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- She looked as if she'd run a marathon.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- I bet you'd have come if it'd been free!  
\_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_
- They'd often eat beans on toast when money was scarce. \_\_\_\_\_
- I'd love to have met Nelson Mandela.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- I knew he'd end up being famous!  
\_\_\_\_\_

### 3 Forming the correct tense

Complete the conversation between Steve and Tara about a photography exhibition. Use the correct form of the verb in brackets to describe either real or unreal situations. Where there is no verb, use an auxiliary verb.

**Steve** What if I <sup>1</sup> said (say) I <sup>2</sup> wasn't coming (not come) to your brother's photography exhibition tonight?

**Tara** Then I'd tell you that you most definitely <sup>3</sup> are .

**S** Oh, I so wish we <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (not have to) go!

**T** Well, we <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (go) – I promised we <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ .

**S** If only you <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ ! And I wish you <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (never buy) him that fancy camera now! I mean, his photos are always so miserable! And black and white, of course. It's as if he <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (not know) it <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (be) possible for photos to be in colour!

**T** It's called social realism. Would you rather he just <sup>11</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (take) photos of people grinning happily at the camera?

**S** Er, yes, I <sup>12</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (prefer) it if he <sup>13</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ actually – I mean, the odd smile <sup>14</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (not do) any harm. And I <sup>15</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (not mind) looking at endless photos of people in grim urban situations if it actually <sup>16</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (do) anyone any good. I can't see that it <sup>17</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (do) – it's just voyeurism.

**T** Oh, for goodness sake, I wish you <sup>18</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (lighten up)!



Homeless man  
Tom Bird

### Urban Life



High-rise flats  
Tom Bird

**S** Well, I wish your brother <sup>19</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ ! And what I don't get is, he acts as if he <sup>20</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (be) some kind of deep-thinking socialist – no one <sup>21</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (guess) he <sup>22</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (live) in a swanky million-pound apartment full of boys' toys.

**T** Oh, give it a rest, will you? And come on, it's time we <sup>23</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (get) ready to go.

**S** OK. Oh well, the good thing is, I won't have to look as though I <sup>24</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (enjoy) myself. I can just scowl meaningfully at the horror of modern society!

Listen and compare.

### 4 Mixed conditionals

Match the sentences halves in **A** and **B**, and complete them with the verbs in brackets.

A	B
1 Well, if you hadn't forgotten to bring the satnav,	a you _____ (not give) this story to cover.
2 Oh, what a shame! I was _____ (suggest) going for a picnic	b if I _____ (not have) dinner with Jeff in an hour.
3 I obviously _____ (not play) in tomorrow's match	c if you'd been performing as well as you think you have.
4 If you weren't such a good journalist,	d if the weather forecast was good.
5 I _____ (not have) this conversation with you now	e we _____ (not drive around) in circles right now.
6 I'd have ordered the chocolate cake too	f I _____ (offer) to take them all to the airport yesterday.
7 If we _____ (not have) children,	g if my physiotherapist had told me not to.
8 If I had a bigger car,	h I would have taken that job in Kuwait.

## 5 Expressions with *if*


Complete the sentences using the expressions with *if* in the box.

if so    if not exactly    if ever    as if    if not    if ever I saw one    if any

- That's a bargain \_\_\_\_\_ !
- The clothes in the catalogue were good value, \_\_\_\_\_ stylish.
- Money itself seldom, \_\_\_\_\_, brings real happiness.
- You'd think there'd be little, \_\_\_\_\_, chance of me bumping into Ted again here, wouldn't you?
- Have you had an accident at work? \_\_\_\_\_, call this number now to discuss compensation!
- After all my problems with the company, they offered me a 10% discount if I used them again. \_\_\_\_\_ !
- Are you a member? \_\_\_\_\_, sign up now!

## Vocabulary

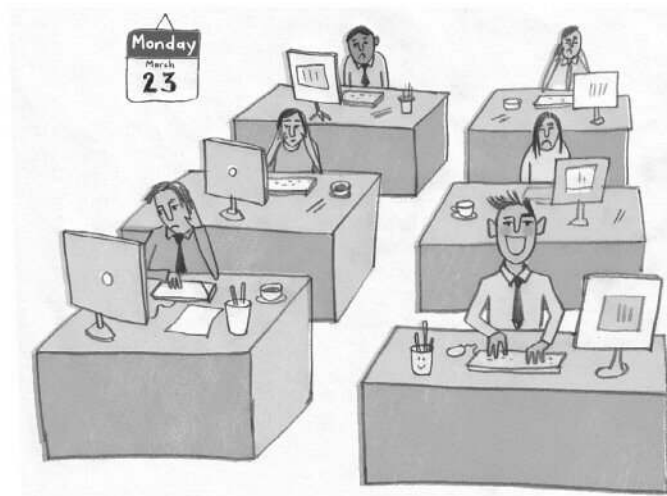
### 6 Synonyms: *happy* and *sad*

- 1  Listen to the lines using the words and phrases 1–10 in **A**, and match them with definitions a–j in **B**.

A	B
1 wistful	a feeling unhappy and angry about being treated unfairly
2 elated	b feeling low, having lost all hope that things can improve
3 bitter	c feeling sad because you want something that belongs to the past
4 despondent	d in a happy, lively mood that makes you say a lot of positive things
5 chirpy	e on an incredible high after a very positive experience

A	B
6 gleeful	f very positive about how things are going and will continue to go
7 out of sorts	g satisfied and not wanting more than what you have
8 upbeat	h stuck in a period where you feel no enthusiasm and motivation
9 in the doldrums	i having an uncomfortable feeling of not being your usual self
10 content	j wildly happy at your own good fortune, and sometimes at other people's misfortune

## 2 Choose the correct option in the sentences.



- Jimmy is such a joy to have in the office! He's always so *chirpy/gleeful* – even on a Monday morning!
- Of course, I would be *content/elated* to win the Nobel Prize for this discovery.
- I often think of the wonderful time I had at university and feel a little *bitter/wistful*.
- Try not to feel *out of sorts/bitter* about not getting your novel published – maybe you just weren't cut out to be a writer.
- You shouldn't be so *content/gleeful* when your opponent misses a shot – it's not good sportsmanship.
- The Finance Minister was in *an upbeat/a chirpy* mood about the prospects for the economy.
- I've been feeling *out of sorts/despondent* since my car accident. It was only a slight bump really, but it seems to have unsettled me.
- Mike's been feeling *bitter/despondent* about getting a job since his last rejection – he thinks that was the best chance he was ever going to get.
- Sometimes I get stuck *in the doldrums/out of sorts* for weeks on end, and I need to go away somewhere to get a new perspective on things.
- It's not the job Shona would have chosen, but she seems *content/bitter* with it.


## 7 Look on the bright side!

Complete the expressions for looking on the bright side in the sentences.

- 1 My team's winning streak seems to have ended with the change of manager, but I must say, it was good while \_\_\_\_\_ !
- 2 I was really upset when I got moved to a different branch of the company, but it turned out to be a blessing \_\_\_\_\_ .
- 3 You have to accept failure as part of the learning process and remember, nothing ventured, \_\_\_\_\_ .
- 4 I'm sorry you've had such a run of rotten luck, but hang \_\_\_\_\_ there! One day you'll \_\_\_\_\_ on all this and laugh!
- 5 Stop dwelling on the fact that you didn't get the contract. What's done \_\_\_\_\_ and you can't \_\_\_\_\_ 'em all.
- 6 Everything has gone wrong on this project so far, but I'm sure it will turn \_\_\_\_\_ in the end.
- 7 **A** I got a big bonus for hitting all my targets at work, and then a massive tax bill for about the same amount!  
**B** Yes, easy \_\_\_\_\_ , easy \_\_\_\_\_ sometimes, isn't it?
- 8 **A** I finally got a refund from the airline, ten months after I applied for it!  
**B** Still, better \_\_\_\_\_ than \_\_\_\_\_ !
- 9 **A** I've ruined this jacket in the washing machine – I didn't realize it was dry clean only.  
**B** Oh well, you live and \_\_\_\_\_ !
- 10 **A** I'm so disappointed I failed my driving test. I thought I was ready for it.  
**B** Never \_\_\_\_\_ , better luck \_\_\_\_\_ !

## Reading

### 8 Why we laugh

- 1  Read and listen to the joke at the beginning of the article. What caused the misunderstanding?
- 2 Read the rest of the article about laughter. Match paragraph endings a–i with spaces 1–9 in the text.  
\_\_\_\_ **a** what's funny in Australia may well not be in Austria.  
\_\_\_\_ **b** they will lose their sense of humour before anything else.  
\_\_\_\_ **c** which provokes exaggerated hilarity as a response to the build-up of anxiety.  
\_\_\_\_ **d** tell them it's far from the truth!  
\_\_\_\_ **e** the joke about the hunters was the winning one.  
\_\_\_\_ **f** So laughter is a way of discharging stress and anxiety.  
1 **g** Or totally hilarious?  
\_\_\_\_ **h** We all know that laughter can be very infectious.  
\_\_\_\_ **i** And is it possible to pinpoint what we all find funny?
- 3 Are the statements true (✓) or false (✗)? Correct the false ones.
  - 1 Richard Wiseman chose the funniest joke from thousands sent in by readers.
  - 2 It's probable that people who live alone laugh less than others.
  - 3 Smiling and laughing have originated from different emotions.
  - 4 The effect of laughter can be seen in the front part of the brain.
  - 5 The joke about the hunters is an example of how we laugh out of relief.
  - 6 Both children and teenagers enjoy humour that adults will disapprove of.
- 4 Complete each sentence with a highlighted word from the text.
  - 1 The meeting should go well. I don't \_\_\_\_\_ any problems because we've prepared for it so thoroughly.
  - 2 What's his name? I think he did tell me, but it didn't \_\_\_\_\_ .
  - 3 All men fall in love with Helen. No-one seems \_\_\_\_\_ to her charms!
  - 4 It's \_\_\_\_\_ that it costs less to buy a return train ticket than a single one!
  - 5 Mike's taken the boys to the football match. It's male \_\_\_\_\_ time today!
  - 6 I can tell you're not listening to me. You've got that \_\_\_\_\_ expression on your face.
  - 7 It's no good saying your remark was just a joke. I found it \_\_\_\_\_ , and would like you to apologize.

# It's no laughing matter!

## A joke:

'Two hunters are out in the woods when one of them collapses. He doesn't seem to be breathing and his eyes are glazed. The other man whips out his phone and calls the emergency services. "I think my friend's dead!" he gasps. "What can I do?" The operator says, "Calm down. I can help. First, let's make sure he's dead." "OK," says the man, putting his phone down. There is a silence, then a shot is heard. Back on the phone, the man says, "OK, now what?"'



## Do you find this joke funny? Mildly amusing? <sup>1</sup>...

A few years ago, psychologist Richard Wiseman set up a project called LaughLab to try and discover the world's funniest joke. The website received 40,000 jokes rated by 1.5 million readers from around the globe. The joke that came out on top can't claim to be the funniest in the world, as the project only included jokes in English, but <sup>2</sup>...

Much research has been done into why humans laugh and what they laugh at – not only by psychologists, but also by neuroscientists and philosophers, for the study of laughter crosses many disciplines. So, why do we laugh? <sup>3</sup>...

The general consensus is that humans laugh as a social **bonding** mechanism. Studies have shown that humans are over 30 times more likely to laugh in company than alone. Even nitrous oxide or 'laughing gas' works more effectively on a group of people than on a single person. <sup>4</sup>...

Some researchers believe that laughter in humans was born out of the relief our ancestors felt after danger had passed. If smiling in humans is considered an extension of the 'fear' face in primates, then laughter is a signal that the fear has gone. When we laugh, our primitive 'fight or flight' reaction to danger is temporarily switched off, further indicating that we now feel relaxed. <sup>5</sup>...

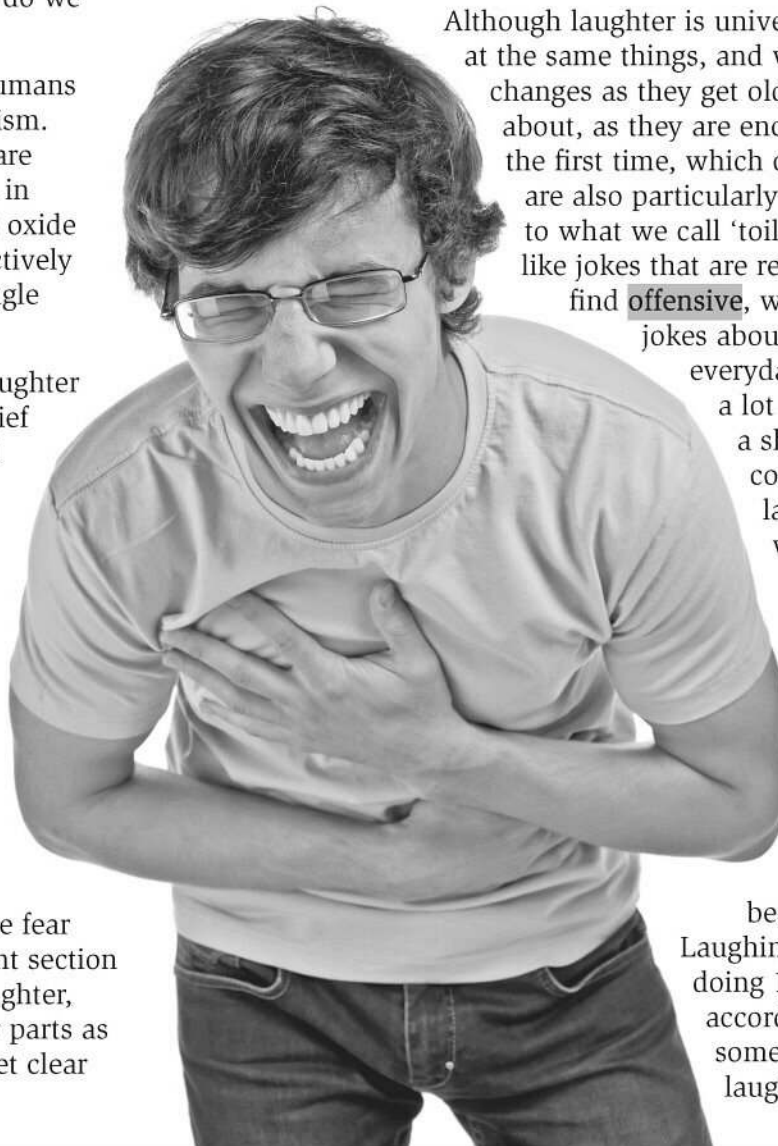
The physiological study of laughter has its own name – 'gelotology'. Scientists have found that most emotional responses, like fear and anger, **register** in the large front section of the brain – the frontal lobe. Laughter, however, registers in various other parts as well, in a type of circuit. It's not yet clear

why, but it means that if a person suffers any sort of brain damage, it's likely that <sup>6</sup>...

Laughter occurs in broadly one of three ways. Firstly, people laugh at the unexpected or the **absurd**; a joke often leads the listener to **anticipate** one outcome, but then offers another. Secondly, people laugh from a position of superiority, i.e. at someone else's mistake or stupidity. Thirdly, people laugh out of relief, as we have seen. This is a device that filmmakers use when they build up a situation of suspense or tension, and then put in a visual gag or a funny aside, <sup>7</sup>...

Although laughter is universal, people don't always laugh at the same things, and what people find funny often changes as they get older. Children find a lot to laugh about, as they are encountering so many things for the first time, which offers constant surprises. They are also particularly amused by the taboo, leading to what we call 'toilet humour'. Teenagers often like jokes that are rebellious and which adults find **offensive**, whereas adults often laugh at jokes about annoying things in their own everyday lives. Furthermore, because a lot of our humour comes from a shared cultural background, countless jokes don't cross language and cultural barriers, with the result that <sup>8</sup>...

Regardless of what different people find funny, people ought to laugh as much as they can. Laughter lowers blood pressure and cuts adrenalin production. While we're laughing, we increase the killer cells which destroy tumours and viruses, and become more **immune** to disease. Laughing 100 times is the same as doing 15 minutes' aerobic exercise, according to scientists. So, next time someone tells you they nearly died laughing, <sup>9</sup>...



# Listening

## 9 Comedy club

- 1 Stand-up comedians perform alone in comedy clubs, walking around on stage as they tell jokes, and often interacting with the audience. Before you listen to a gig by an American stand-up comedian called Mike Stein, match the words he uses in **A** with their definitions in **B**.

A	B
1 jammed	a taxi driver
2 pointless	b reach a conclusion using logic
3 sardine	c robe worn for academic ceremonies
4 highbrow	d not working because something is stuck
5 gown	e push someone with your elbow to get their attention
6 cabbie	f intellectual
7 nudge	g having no purpose
8 deduce	h small fish, often packed in tins

**Mike Stein**  
Stand-up comedian



- 2 Listen to Mike performing and see if you get all his jokes.
- 3 Listen again and answer the questions.
- Why is it considered pointless to run away from a bear?
  - Which job had no future in it?
  - What's the homophone of *so* that makes 'so-so' funny for the job of tailor?
  - What does the physics professor do during the last lecture?
  - Dr Watson uses the adverbs *Astronomically*, *Horologically*, and *Meteorologically*. Which refers to ...?
    - the time
    - the weather
    - planets and stars

- 4 Many of the jokes use homonyms. Write the letters (a-l) of the alternative meanings for each homonym.

- reservation h \_\_\_\_
- interest \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_
- shocking \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_
- drive \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_
- suit \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_
- make up \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_
- a be appropriate for
- b awful
- c matching jacket and trousers
- d doubt about something
- e invent
- f energy and motivation
- g constitute
- ~~h~~ booking
- i computer disc that stores data
- j feeling of wanting to know more
- k money earned on savings
- l producing an electric shock

- 5 Match the two halves of these one-line jokes. Then listen and check.

- I used to think I was indecisive,
- I intend to live forever.
- You should laugh at your problems.
- My computer can beat me at chess.
- First the doctor told me the good news.
- Live your dreams.
- There are three kinds of people.
- If at first you don't succeed,
- a Those who can count, and those who can't.
- b I was going to have a disease named after me.
- c then skydiving isn't the hobby for you.
- d So far, so good.
- e Everybody else does.
- f It's no match for me at kickboxing, though.
- g but now I'm not so sure.
- h Except for that one where you're naked at the bus stop.

## Phrasal verbs

### 10 on and off

Complete the text about pessimism using the correct form of the verbs in the box.

go	wear	split	write	sneak up
bring	dream	verge	catch	keep

The glass *is*  
sometimes half  
empty



'Depression? <sup>1</sup> **Bring** it **on!**' Maybe that's not a slogan you can imagine <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ **on**, but there is something to be said for allowing at least a measure of negativity into your life. Studies have shown that people with a slight depressive tendency do in fact have a more realistic view of the world and their ability to influence it than those who <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ **on** and on about the need to think positively. So if you tell a pessimist your life plans and they reply with, '<sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ **on!**', you shouldn't immediately <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ them **off** as completely wrongheaded.

We all know that a relentlessly positive outlook sometimes <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ **on** manic behaviour, when people's negative feelings get <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ **off** and buried. These feelings can then <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ **on** them and take them by surprise. As their optimism begins to <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ **off**, it becomes impossible to <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ **on** being so totally upbeat about life.

## Pronunciation

### 11 Linking in conditional sentences

1 Rewrite the sentences using a conditional. Listen and check.

1 She didn't invite me so I didn't go.

If she'd invited me, I'd have gone.

2 He insulted me so I avoided him.

If \_\_\_\_\_.

3 They didn't offer me a discount so I won't upgrade.

I \_\_\_\_\_.

4 He didn't impress me enough at the interview. I didn't employ him.

If \_\_\_\_\_.

5 The college hasn't opened. I'm not going to enrol.

I \_\_\_\_\_.

6 You overcooked the vegetables. I didn't eat them.

If \_\_\_\_\_.

7 You haven't achieved as much as me. You don't earn the same.

If \_\_\_\_\_.

8 She ignored you because you interrupted her.

She \_\_\_\_\_.

9 She annoyed me a lot. I won't apologize.

If \_\_\_\_\_.

10 It didn't occur to me. I didn't ask them for a lift.

If \_\_\_\_\_.

2 Listen again and repeat the sentences. Pay attention to the linking, especially with the verbs and auxiliaries.

If she'd invited me, I'd have gone.

# 8

Relative clauses • Participles • Relative pronouns and participles  
• Verbs + preposition • Opposite adjectives • Reading aloud

## Gender matters?

She cursed her gender. Nobody would have dared attack her if she had been a man.

Stieg Larsson (1954–2004)  
Novelist and journalist

We've begun to raise daughters more like sons ... but few have the courage to raise our sons more like our daughters.

Gloria Steinem (1934–)  
Journalist and activist

## Relative clauses and participles

### 1 Defining and non-defining relative clauses

1 Are these sentences more likely to be completed with defining (D) or non-defining (ND) relative clauses?

- 1 ☒ D Women ... can expect to live until they are 84.
- 2 ☐ I'd like you to meet someone ... .
- 3 ☐ My brother, ... , is still at school.
- 4 ☐ Her parents gave her the latest iPad for her birthday, ... .
- 5 ☐ Children ... are often rude and bad-mannered.
- 6 ☐ I got a pay rise, ... , so we were able to have a holiday.
- 7 ☐ The guy ... is in my department.
- 8 ☐ Men, ... , are not more intelligent than women.
- 9 ☐ My grandma can remember a time ... .
- 10 ☐ People ... shouldn't throw stones.

2 Which lines in a–j below complete sentences 1–10 in exercise 1? Write in a suitable relative pronoun.

- a which pleased her greatly 4
- b \_\_\_\_\_ come from Japan
- c \_\_\_\_\_ I wasn't expecting
- d \_\_\_\_\_ I've been wanting to introduce you to for ages
- e \_\_\_\_\_ there were hardly any women politicians
- f \_\_\_\_\_ parents don't set behavioural boundaries
- g \_\_\_\_\_ you saw me talking to
- h \_\_\_\_\_ live in glass houses
- i \_\_\_\_\_ is ten years younger than me
- j \_\_\_\_\_ brains are a bit bigger than women's

### 2 Expressions of quantity + of + a relative pronoun

Expressions of quantity, **some**, **many**, **all**, **none**, etc. can be used with **of + whom/which/whose**. Compare these sentences. Which sounds more formal?

*They're a clever couple. Their children all went to Oxford University.*

*They're a clever couple, all of whose children went to Oxford University.*

Rewrite these two sentences as one using an expression of quantity and *of*.

- 1 There were hundreds of people at the show. The majority gave the actors a standing ovation.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 2 I watched the whole programme. Parts were very boring.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 He has over 500 friends on Facebook. He knows only a few of them well.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 I've collected hundreds of recipes. My grandmother gave me most of them.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 5 He owns three houses. He doesn't live in any them.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 6 She entered two races. She didn't win either of them.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 7 I have two brothers. I get on well with both of their wives.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 8 I went to check on the swans. Three of their cygnets were eaten by a fox.  
\_\_\_\_\_

### 3 Common phrases with relative pronouns

Complete these phrases with the correct relative pronoun.

- 1 He shouted at her again, **at** \_\_\_\_\_ **point** she left the room.
- 2 I liked the film, especially **the part** \_\_\_\_\_ they finally discovered the truth.
- 3 You don't like babies? **In** \_\_\_\_\_ **case** you'd better not have any.
- 4 **The reasons** \_\_\_\_\_ I'm leaving my job are obvious to anyone.
- 5 She arrived 15 minutes late, **by** \_\_\_\_\_ **time** the play had started.
- 6 I'm looking forward to **the time** \_\_\_\_\_ I'm old enough to drive.
- 7 It's amazing the **extent to** \_\_\_\_\_ some people go to, to bag a sun lounger.
- 8 **In** \_\_\_\_\_ **name** was the account opened – yours or your wife's?

### 4 Participle clauses

Rewrite the sentences using a word below and a participle with *-ing*. Make any tense changes necessary.

after before by on since while

- 1 He fed the baby and talked to me on his phone.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 2 They invested wisely and made a fortune.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 When you arrive at the conference centre you must register immediately.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 She had twins. She has no time for herself.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 5 We heard a storm was coming and decided not to go sailing.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 6 Turn on the burglar alarm when you leave the building.  
\_\_\_\_\_

## Relative pronouns and participles

### 5 Gender-neutral pronouns

*He/she, him/her* are pronouns which signal gender. Read the article about attempts to 'neutralize' them and complete it with the phrases in the boxes.

Relative clause	Present participle	Past participle
where other options that surprised her which of these new pronouns the extent to which	While dropping off when describing currently working being asked having been replaced a passing fad before pinning on	well-respected labelled to be addressed totally unfazed




British journalist **Alexandra Frean**, <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ in America as a US business correspondent, had a linguistic experience <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ enormously. <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ her son for his first term at university on the American west coast she overheard him <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ what gender pronoun he would like <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ by during his university career. Did he want 'he', 'she', or a gender neutral alternative such as 'ze'? Her son, <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, immediately replied 'he', <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ himself a name badge <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ 'he, his, him'.

Apparently, 'preferred gender pronouns', or PGPs, are spreading in US universities, <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ include 'sie', 'e', 'ou', 've' and also the singular 'they'. It's surprising to learn <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ this trend is catching on. It stems from a desire to eliminate gender stereotypes <sup>11</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ people. We're all now familiar with fireman, air hostess, and chairman <sup>12</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ by firefighter, flight attendant, and chairperson or chair.

However, <sup>13</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ experts in this linguistic field say that it's impossible to predict <sup>14</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ will go into common usage and which will prove to be just <sup>15</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.

# Reading

## 6 Meet the first female footballers

- 1 Look at the pictures and the captions. Why would the outfits worn by the women 'kick up a fuss' at the time?
- 2 Read the article quickly.
  - 1 Who are these people?  
Nellie Hudson, Helen Matthews, Nettie J. Honeyball, Mrs Graham, Stuart Gibbs, Colin Yates
  - 2 The women are wearing *bloomers* and *knickerbockers*. Which two adjectives, meaning 'big and baggy', are used to describe them? Why can't you see the bloomers?
- 3  Listen to and read the article again. Are these statements true (✓) or false (✗)? Correct the false ones.
  - 1 In the 1880s, the negative public reaction to female football teams delayed female emancipation.
  - 2 The matches were very well-attended.
  - 3 The players' outfits were made of silk.
  - 4 Despite being shocked, some spectators went on to encourage their own female relatives to start playing.
  - 5 Sports writers were scathing in their descriptions of the games.
  - 6 Nellie Hudson created two football teams, who only played against each other.
  - 7 Female footballers were banned in Scotland because their team lost twice to England.
  - 8 Helen Matthews moved to England to help Nellie Hudson set up the teams.
- 4 Find words in the text that can replace the words in *italics*.
  - 1 The teams' *battles* on the pitch during matches *caused* riots.
  - 2 Thousands of people *gathered* to see the *vulgar sight* of women playing football.
  - 3 It was reported that the women looked pretty because of the *genteel manner* in which they presented themselves.
  - 4 The British Ladies' Football Club caused *an uproar* in the press.
  - 5 Nellie Hudson had a *firm determination* to prove that women were as worthwhile as men.
  - 6 Stuart Gibbs and Colin Yates *put together* the photos for the exhibition.
- 5 Underline all examples of relative clauses and present and past participles in the text.



# Knickerbocker Glory!!

## They kicked up quite a fuss in their bloomers and knickerbockers!

In buttoned-up blouses and billowing bloomers, they may not look as though they are dressed for the football pitch. But these are the members of Britain's first official female football teams, whose clashes on the field in the 1880s sparked riots *off* it, and contributed to greater empowerment for women.

The pictures, uncovered as part of an exhibition charting the history of women's football, reveal the characters who tackled a man's world for the first time.

However, while thousands flocked to see their matches, by 1895, when these photographs were taken, they were still less fascinated by the players' silky skills than by what they might be wearing for the unladylike spectacle.

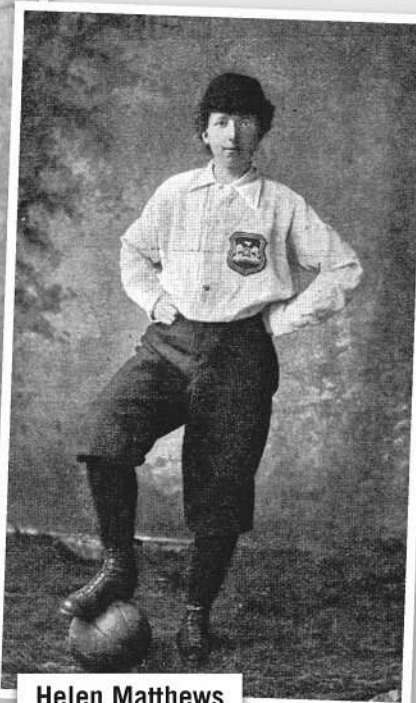
One newspaper report at the time said: 'The young women presented a pretty appearance on the field, and this was in great measure due to the nice assortment of colours, as well as the dainty way in which the women set them off.' Casting aside corsets in favour of voluminous knickerbockers and prim bonnets amounted to quite an eyeful back in Victorian times and spectators frequently tried to get onto the pitch to get closer to the players.

Another newspaper of the day noted: 'There will always be curiosity to see women do unwomanly things, and it is not surprising that the match was attended by a crowd numbering several thousands, very few of whom would like to have their own sisters or daughters exhibiting themselves on the football field.' At the centre of the furore was the British Ladies' Football Club, which played dozens of games that year.

Founded by the enigmatic Nellie Hudson, known as Nettie J. Honeyball, the club fielded teams called North and South, which played against each other. In a newspaper interview she declared she had founded the club 'with the fixed resolve of proving to the world that women are not the ornamental and useless creatures men have pictured'.



Nellie Hudson



Helen Matthews

Sports writers of the day tended to disagree, though. According to a match report from *The Sketch*, 'it would be idle to attempt any description of the play.' It went on: 'The first few minutes were sufficient to show that football by women is totally out of the question. For the most part, the ladies wandered aimlessly over the field at an ungraceful jog-trot. A smaller ball than usual was utilized, but the strongest among them could propel it no further than a few yards.'

In the North team was Helen Matthews, a goalkeeper who played under the name of Mrs Graham. She had founded the first female Scottish national side, Mrs Graham's XI, in 1881. In May of that year riots erupted after the team defeated an English side twice. As a result, women were banned from playing football in Scotland, so Matthews headed south and later joined forces with Nellie Hudson. But many believe her team deserves credit for helping women get the vote in Scottish local government elections, since campaigners received the royal assent just a day after the unrest.


Stuart Gibbs, 47, who helped compile the exhibition, said: 'The players were all part of the rights for women movement so maybe the game was seen as a sign of the times and had some influence.' Historian and exhibition organizer Colin Yates, 54, added: 'The games often caused anger from men who disliked women doing what, at the time, was a man's job.'

# Listening


## 7 Toy stories

- 1 You are going to listen to a radio interview with research scientist, Professor Joanne Malone, about children's toys. Read the sentences. The words in *italics* are from the interview. Match them with words from the box.

categorized	boring and nerdy	knowledgeable	tricked
persuaded	absurdly	was shared by millions online	

- It seems that the next generation is much more *savvy* than we are.
  - The video *went viral* and was watched by hundreds of thousands of viewers.
  - She felt *pigeonholed* as a girl because she was *duped* into buying pink stuff.
  - Perhaps her parents *put her up to* making the complaint.
  - Science toys are just the sort of thing I would have liked as a *geeky* child!
  - Marketing cooking to girls only is a *ridiculously* old-fashioned attitude.
- 2  Listen to the interview. Match the children mentioned with the relevant issue. Fill in their ages.

NAME	AGE	ISSUE
Riley Barry	_____	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>petitioned Hasbro to make an oven that was gender neutral</li> <li>complained on YouTube™ about pink and blue packaging for toys</li> <li>wrote to Lego™ requesting more girl figures doing more exciting activities</li> <li>didn't want a Hasbro Easy-Bake Oven that was just marketed to girls</li> </ul>
Emma Owen	_____	
Gavyn Boscio	_____	
McKenna Pope	_____	

- 3  Listen again. Underline the best option to complete the sentences.
- 'Parents for Change' is *a research organization that looks into gender problems / an online forum where people can discuss parenting issues*.
  - Professor Joanne Malone says that *it's possible to change things if enough people join together to do so / it's unlikely that children will have their views taken seriously by adults*.
  - Riley Barry's main point was that *superheroes should be marketed in both pink and blue boxes / she didn't want to be told what she could play with*.
  - Scientist Dr Kooijman *responded to the letter sent by Emma Owen to Lego / approached Lego with an idea for new characters*.
  - McKenna Pope thought that Hasbro *should make a blue toy oven just for boys / was being sexist in its advertising for its toy oven*.
  - Hamleys found that *its new gender neutral toy display was financially successful / girls bought more boys' toys after they removed the pink and blue sections*.



## Prepositions

### 8 Verb + preposition

Complete the sentences with the correct preposition.

- Women used to be banned \_\_\_\_\_ becoming football players.
- How did the newspapers react \_\_\_\_\_ female players?
- I stumbled \_\_\_\_\_ some old photographs of my great-great-grandparents when clearing the attic.
- The BBC was flooded \_\_\_\_\_ complaints about the sexist remarks in the interview.
- The judge was accused \_\_\_\_\_ being biased.
- His methods of child-rearing did not always coincide \_\_\_\_\_ his wife's.
- The footpath stretches \_\_\_\_\_ miles along the coast of Wales.
- My boss insists \_\_\_\_\_ travelling first class on business trips.
- Your flight to New York connects \_\_\_\_\_ your flight from Miami.
- If you can't rely \_\_\_\_\_ your best friend, who can you rely \_\_\_\_\_?
- How are you settling \_\_\_\_\_ your new house?
- I was tricked \_\_\_\_\_ buying a watch that turned out to be a fake.

## Vocabulary

### 9 Opposite adjectives

Some adjectives have more than one meaning and therefore more than one opposite. Choose the opposite adjectives from the words in the box.

guilty	unassuming	balanced	outdated
exorbitant	close	recent	rough
timid	high	excitable	awkward
mild	successful	irrational	overcast
pale	difficult	distant	fresh

- hot topic \_\_\_\_\_ outdated  
hot curry \_\_\_\_\_ mild
- close relative \_\_\_\_\_  
close weather \_\_\_\_\_
- easy question \_\_\_\_\_  
easy manner \_\_\_\_\_
- clear sky \_\_\_\_\_  
clear conscience \_\_\_\_\_
- distant relation \_\_\_\_\_  
distant memory \_\_\_\_\_
- poor diet \_\_\_\_\_  
poor quality \_\_\_\_\_
- reasonable price \_\_\_\_\_  
reasonable person \_\_\_\_\_
- vain attempt \_\_\_\_\_  
vain person \_\_\_\_\_
- bold colour \_\_\_\_\_  
bold person \_\_\_\_\_
- calm person \_\_\_\_\_  
calm sea \_\_\_\_\_

## Pronunciation

### 10 Reading aloud: punctuation and the sounds /ʃ/ /tʃ/ and /ʒ/ /dʒ/


- Read these sentences aloud. Which need pauses? Write in any necessary punctuation.
  - My mum whose cakes are the best in the world never taught me to cook.
  - I was shown to my room at which point I decided to look for another hotel.
  - The daughter who's expecting a baby lives nearby.
  - Her eldest daughter who's expecting a baby lives nearby.
  - My grandchildren don't play outdoors enough which worries me.
  - Anna is a friend who never lets you down.
  - This gold watch left to me by my grandfather is my most valuable possession.
  - What I hate about air travel are the endless queues.

 Listen and check.

- The words below are all from Unit 8. They contain the consonant sounds /ʃ/ /tʃ/ and /ʒ/ /dʒ/. Read them aloud and write them in the correct box.


passengers	nurture	prejudice	delicious	measure
technician	usual	huge	patience	pressure
nature	encouraged	pleasure	chef	creatures
sufficient	energetic	option	session	research

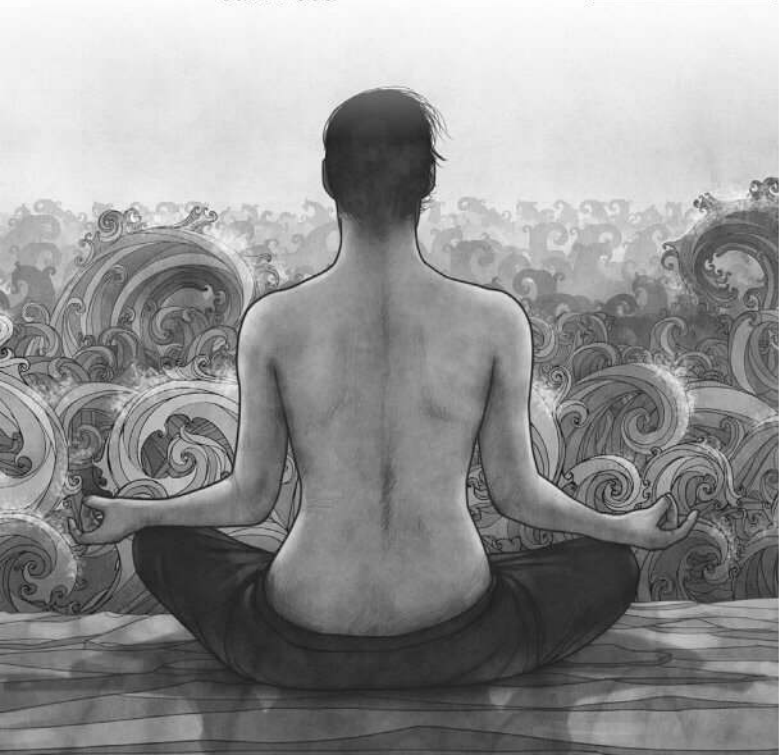
/ʃ/ social	/tʃ/ children	/ʒ/ Asia	/dʒ/ gender

 Listen and check.

- Read aloud and transcribe these sentences from phonemic script.

- /peɪʃəns ɪz ə vɜːtʃuː/ \_\_\_\_\_
- /ðə ʃeɪfs fuːd wəz dɪlɪʃəs æz juːʒuəl/ \_\_\_\_\_
- /ðæt fɪʃ ɪz hjuːdʒ/ \_\_\_\_\_
- /saɪəntɪsts hævnt dʌn səfɪʃənt rɪsɜːtʃ jet/ \_\_\_\_\_
- /preʃə ət wɜːk ɪznt ə pleʒə/ \_\_\_\_\_
- /wɪtʃ ɪz mɔːr ɪmpɔːtənt neɪtʃə ɔː nɜːtʃə/ \_\_\_\_\_

 Listen and check.



# 9

- Discourse markers • Music vocabulary • Rhyming words
- Phrasal verbs with particle and preposition • Stress and intonation

## The sound of music

I don't know anything about music. In my line, you don't have to.

Elvis Presley (1935–1977)  
Singer and actor

A gentleman is someone who knows how to play the banjo, and doesn't.

Mark Twain (1835–1910)  
Author

## Discourse markers

### 1 Attitude markers

- 1 Match the lines in **A** with the replies in **B**. Complete the replies in **B** with the discourse markers in the box.

No doubt  
At least  
Given that  
Surprisingly,  
Surely  
Admittedly,  
To be honest,  
Predictably,

A	B
1 'Will you be going to the Rolling Stones concert?'	a '_____ there are a couple of decent songs.'
2 'We'll need some cash – it's a private beach.'	b '_____ we lost. 6–0 in fact.'
3 'Do you like my shirt?'	c '_____ you won't be going back there again.'
4 'I knew you'd never get far in a singing contest.'	d '_____ I don't think that colour suits you.'
5 'How did your match against the champions go?'	e '_____ she didn't. She failed her maths.'
6 'Honestly, it was the worst meal I've ever had.'	f '_____ I tried, though, unlike you.'
7 'Surely their new album isn't all bad?'	g <b>Given that</b> tickets are over £100, I don't think so.'
8 'I assume Jo passed her exams as expected?'	h '_____ they can't charge us for sitting on the sand?'

 Listen and check.

- 2 Choose the correct option to follow the discourse markers in **bold**.

- A** What was Rome like?

**B** **As you'd expect** in the middle of summer, *it was very hot and full of tourists / it wasn't that hot, and fairly deserted.*
- You need to find a savings account with an interest rate above inflation, **otherwise** *your money will be losing value / you'll make a decent return on your money.*
- We had a lovely time in Northumberland – amazing beaches and spectacular castles! **Mind you**, *it would have been nice if it had rained a bit less! / the weather was pretty good, too!*
- A** You must be concerned about all the rumours going round about you.

**B** **Frankly**, *I don't really care / it's very important to me what other people think.*
- You can't expect Dan to be friendly with us all the time at work. **After all**, *he is our boss. / he has a joke with us sometimes.*
- I don't agree with you that Claire's been manipulative. **Besides**, *she's acted perfectly honestly. / it's got nothing to do with you.*
- It's a shame the company's moving out of central London – I like the buzz of being in the city. **Still**, *it means that commuting will be easier. / lunch breaks won't be as much fun.*
- A** You must be dreading spending so much time on your own!

**B** **As a matter of fact**, *I don't think I'll enjoy it at all. / I'm looking forward to it!*

## 2 Zach Sobiech

1 Read the fact file about Zach Sobiech and answer the questions.

- 1 What nationality was Zach?
- 2 Did he perform solo?
- 3 How old was Zach when he died?
- 4 What do you think he died of?

**Zachary Sobiech, singer/songwriter:** 1995–2013

**From:** Stillwater, Minnesota

**Band:** A Firm Handshake

**Biggest hit:** *Clouds* (YouTube™ hits: 11m)

**Cover version featuring:** Jason Mraz, Ashley Tisdale, Sara Bareilles

**Profits to:** Children's Cancer Research Fund

2 Choose the correct discourse markers in the text.

# ZACH'S

After a run, teenager Zach Sobiech's hip remained sore, so he went for a medical scan.

<sup>1</sup> *Probably*,/Naturally, no one thought it would be anything serious. <sup>2</sup> *Alarmingly*,/Predictably, the diagnosis was osteosarcoma, a rare form of bone cancer, which led to ten operations and 20 rounds of chemotherapy. <sup>3</sup> *Inevitably*,/Tragically, the cancer still spread, and Zach was given a year to live. He declined further treatment, knowing that he would <sup>4</sup> *otherwise*/anyway spend the rest of his life in hospital. He wanted to enjoy the time he had left with friends. <sup>5</sup> *Still*,/Above all, he wanted to be home with his family.



# INSPIRING *swansong*



He also used the time to become the singer-songwriter he'd always wanted to be. <sup>6</sup> *Apparently*,/Obviously, it was a result of his mum suggesting he write letters to people to say goodbye – <sup>7</sup> *at least*/otherwise they would then have something to hold on to when he was gone. Zach said he thought he was better at writing songs than letters, and <sup>8</sup> *by the way*,/besides, songs are 'more powerful than writing a letter because a song can get stuck in your head.' His friend and co-writer, Samantha Brown, said it wasn't easy for Zach to talk openly about his feelings, <sup>9</sup> *as you'd expect*/given that he was a teenage boy, but that music was a way for him to 'get it out there'.

Zach remained incredibly positive about life, writing as many songs as he could, and many went viral.

<sup>10</sup> *Unusually*,/Frankly, so did the moving and uplifting video about him,

*My Last Days*, it being rare for such a long clip (22 minutes) to get as many as 13 million views. He gave public concerts, but <sup>11</sup> *inevitably*,/surprisingly, his health gradually deteriorated to the point where he was unable to. His single *Clouds* became the first by an independent artist to reach number 1 on iTunes, <sup>12</sup> *aptly enough*/presumably on the day of his funeral ('We'll go up in the clouds because the view is a little nicer').

So many people have been inspired by his message that 'you don't have to find out you're dying to start living', and his approach to life. <sup>13</sup> *Admittedly*,/Actually, it's really simple. It's just, try and make people happy,' he said. 'You live right in front of you. You make small plans and focus on those. It's the little things, <sup>14</sup> *apparently*/honestly.'

### 3 A review

Complete each paragraph of the review of a classical concert with the discourse markers on the right.

#### Concert reviews

★☆☆☆☆

University Orchestra, with St Martin's Choir,  
St Martin's, July 18th  
Symphony no.40 Mozart  
Zadok the Priest Handel



I have to say, I was very disappointed with this concert. <sup>1</sup> **Obviously**, one shouldn't demand the highest standards from university players – <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, they are amateurs – but <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, I expected a lot more from a group of music students. <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ that's not unreasonable?

quite honestly  
surely  
after all  
obviously

<sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, much of the Mozart symphony was played at half the usual speed, <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ to give the struggling string players a chance to get the notes right, though <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ this strategy was not successful. <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, the less said about their performance of this piece, the better.

unfortunately  
bizarrely  
frankly  
presumably

The choral work was Handel's *Zadok the Priest*. <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, this is familiar to many these days as the anthem for the football Champions League (I wouldn't know, <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ I've never watched a football match in my life). <sup>11</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, the basses in the choir did sound a little like chanting football fans. <sup>12</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, the standard of singing overall wasn't bad, but again the orchestra let things down.

given that  
to be fair  
apparently  
funnily enough

<sup>13</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, I can safely say I won't be going to any more of the University Players' concerts this summer, and <sup>14</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, I'm not going to recommend anyone else does either. <sup>15</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, the church setting was nice.

still  
clearly  
anyway

## Vocabulary

### 4 Music vocabulary

1 Which of the words or phrases in the pairs with similar meanings are usually used for classical music, and which for rock music? Write **C** or **R**.

1	recital	<b>C</b>	gig	<b>R</b>
2	songwriter	—	composer	—
3	lead guitarist	—	first violinist	—
4	percussionist	—	drummer	—
5	pianist	—	keyboard player	—
6	band	—	ensemble	—
7	choir	—	backing vocalists	—
8	riff	—	motif	—
9	guitar legend	—	maestro	—
10	arrangement	—	cover version	—
11	quintet	—	five-piece band	—
12	session musician	—	accompanist	—

2 Complete the sentences with one of the words or phrases from exercise 1.

- My brother studied classical piano at music college, but he's now a \_\_\_\_\_ in a rock band.
- Schubert was a \_\_\_\_\_ who wrote many songs as well as symphonies and chamber music.
- The Oscar-winning film *20 Feet from Stardom* is about the unknown \_\_\_\_\_ who sang on some of the greatest hits of all time.
- 'The Edge' (David Evans) is the \_\_\_\_\_ in U2. His guitar technique is what gives the band its unique sound.
- Mozart is usually associated with string and piano music, but he also wrote pieces for wind \_\_\_\_\_.
- Everyone recognizes the guitar \_\_\_\_\_ at the beginning of *(I Can't Get No) Satisfaction* by the Rolling Stones.
- I'm going to a piano and cello \_\_\_\_\_ by Hélène Grimaud and Sol Gabetta next Saturday.
- I Will always Love You* was originally a Dolly Parton song, but it's the \_\_\_\_\_ by Whitney Houston that will always be remembered.
- I used to sing in my church \_\_\_\_\_ as a boy, but they didn't want me after my voice broke!
- Beethoven's *Minuet in G* was originally written for orchestra, but only an \_\_\_\_\_ for piano now exists.


## Pronunciation (1)

### 5 Rhyming words: /eə/ /u:/ /i:/ /əʊ/

- 1 Write the words in the box under the correct heading to make four groups of rhyming words.

plea	view	dough	rare
queue	flee	flow	blew
heir	key	sew	billionaire
debut	plateau	quay	through
prayer	debris	swear	foe

A there /ðeə/	B zoo /zu:/
C we /wi:/	D owe /əʊ/


 Listen and check.

- 2 Which twelve of the words in exercise 1 are defined below?
- the past tense of *blow* **blew**
  - an enemy
  - a flat area of high ground
  - pieces of something destroyed
  - a strong, heartfelt request
  - a first performance
  - bread before it's baked
  - to use a needle and thread
  - the platform ships leave from
  - to move like water
  - a person who inherits
  - to escape

## 6 Cockney rhyming slang



Cockney rhyming slang is believed to have originally been a code used by Londoners to make it hard for outsiders to understand them. Some of the expressions have become familiar to all English speakers. Sometimes when the rhyming slang is two words, only the first word is actually used when speaking. The rhyme is always with the second word however.


 Listen and replace the examples of slang in *italics* with their rhyming meanings in the box.

thieves	clue	lies	look	feet	mate
wife	head	pinch	money	stairs	word

- Come on kids! Up them *apples (and pears)* and into bed! **stairs**
- Can you lend me some *bread (and honey)*? \_\_\_\_\_
- Don't worry love, I won't say a *dicky bird* to anyone! \_\_\_\_\_
- Oh, I need a sit-down – I've been on my *plates (of meat)* all day.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Watch your handbag – this square's a favourite spot for *tea leaves*.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Well, time to go home and see how the *trouble and strife* is.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Here, come and have a *butcher's (hook)* at Jeff's new car!  
\_\_\_\_\_
- So how are you, my old *China (plate)*? \_\_\_\_\_
- I think you've been telling a few *porkies (pork pies)*! \_\_\_\_\_
- Someone will *half-inch* your bike if you leave it there.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Do you know how to send photos on this phone? I haven't a *Scooby (Doo)*. \_\_\_\_\_
- Come on – it's not difficult to work out! Use your *loaf (of bread)*!  
\_\_\_\_\_

# Reading

## 7 Mick Jagger

- 1  Read and listen to the biography of legendary rocker Mick Jagger and put these life events in the correct order.
  - a \_\_\_\_\_ Became a full-time musician.
  - b \_\_\_\_\_ Started at the London School of Economics.
  - c \_\_\_\_\_ Joined the church choir.
  - d \_\_\_\_\_ Met Keith Richards for the second time.
  - e \_\_\_\_\_ Formed his first band.
  - f \_\_\_\_\_ Became Sir Michael Jagger.
  - g \_\_\_\_\_ Went to secondary school.
  - h \_\_\_\_\_ Married for the second time.
  - i \_\_\_\_\_ Bit the end of his tongue off.
- 2 Are the sentences true (✓) or false (✗)? Correct the false ones.
  - 1 Mick Jagger's growling, gritty style is a result of his deprived background.
  - 2 He always wanted to be a teacher before he became a professional musician.
  - 3 He was a friend of Keith Richard's throughout his childhood.
  - 4 Mick's background had originally been a disadvantage to him as a rock singer.
  - 5 He graduated from a London college, while also performing in the band.
  - 6 His parents were not always supportive of his chosen career path.
  - 7 The Rolling Stones were much less popular than the Beatles.
  - 8 The Queen and Prince Charles took part in the ceremony for his knighthood.
- 3 Look at how the words and phrases are used in the text and match those with similar meanings.
 

1 rebellious	a unique
2 high-energy	b follow
3 cute	c constant
4 tough	d anti-establishment
5 collect	e charming
6 distinctive	f gritty
7 undiminished	g intense
8 pursue	h amass

# Mick Jagger

In the early days of rock music, people would have laughed at the idea of a rock singer in his seventies, but that hasn't stopped Mick Jagger pursuing his career of rock legend for over half a century. He has been described as 'one of the most popular and influential frontmen in the history of rock and roll'.

He was born Michael Philip Jagger in 1943 to a middle-class family in Kent, England, his father a teacher and his mother a hairdresser. Although bright and studious – at one time the young Jagger also aimed to follow the teaching profession – he had an overriding passion. 'I always sang as a child. I was one of those kids who just *liked* to sing.' He sang in the church choir, and copied all the singers he heard on the radio and TV.

In primary school, Jagger had already come across the boy who would later be a fellow member of one of the greatest rock groups in history – he and Keith Richards were classmates until they went to different secondary schools. At his new school, Mick was lead singer in the blues band he formed with friends. The band worried whether he'd be able to continue singing after an accident playing basketball, when Mick bit off and swallowed the tip of his tongue. It turned out the injury had indeed changed his voice, but for the better, they thought – less polished and middle-class. 'Mick now sounded grittier, tougher, more authentically street,' said one band member. 'Biting off the tip of his tongue might have been the best thing that ever happened to Mick Jagger.'



The young Mick, top right

# Grand Master of Rock



**The Rolling Stones**

After a chance meeting with Keith Richards again at 17, they developed a friendship based on their shared love of American blues music. Jagger entered the London School of Economics, with thoughts of becoming a journalist or politician, but his energies soon became focused on the new band he joined, along with Keith, which in 1962 became known as the 'Rollin' Stones' – the 'g' was added later.

Their unique sound quickly attracted attention, and their gigs soon became a popular part of the 'swinging 60s' London scene. Jagger's parents were not enthusiastic. His strict father had never approved of the kind of music his son played, calling it 'jungle music' ('That's a very good description', Mick once replied). Mick decided to leave college nevertheless and devote himself to being a full-time rock and roller.

After initially performing cover versions of their favourite blues numbers, Jagger and Richards went on to become one of the most creative and prolific songwriting teams ever. Jagger's high-energy, wild performances and distinctive growling vocal delivery became a trademark of the group, along with Richards' guitar playing. They were seen as anti-establishment, whereas the members of the other major British group at the time, the Beatles, were seen as cute and charming. 'I wasn't trying to be rebellious in those days,' Jagger says, 'I was just being me ... ordinary, the guy from suburbia who sings in this band.'



His subsequent life has been anything but ordinary, however. He married twice – in 1971 and 1978 – and is a devoted father to the seven children he has had by four women. He set up the band's own record label, has acted in films, won awards, produced films, met presidents, and at 60 collected a knighthood from Prince Charles. He has also amassed a considerable fortune, selling over 200 million albums.

Nonetheless, his constant first love remains performing. Despite being a great-grandfather, he still sings with the same raw energy and physicality he had decades earlier, and loves touring. 'Each show is a new event ... It's a very exciting couple of hours and it's a very intense relationship with the audience.'

It is this undiminished passion for what he does that has made him a legend in his own lifetime.

# Listening

## 8 Music at work

1 Do you think these statements about listening to music while working are true (✓) or false (X)?

- 1 It's common for surgeons to listen to music while they are performing operations. \_\_\_\_
- 2 If people listen to music at work, it's important that they can choose the music. \_\_\_\_
- 3 People with attention deficit disorder are the ones who suffer most if music is played while they are working. \_\_\_\_
- 4 People can always concentrate better when there is silence. \_\_\_\_
- 5 Listening to music is unhelpful when learning new tasks. \_\_\_\_
- 6 People who have developed a habit of listening to music at work perform better if the music is taken away. \_\_\_\_
- 7 Listening to music at work makes time go faster. \_\_\_\_
- 8 It's easier to concentrate when listening to instrumental music rather than music with lyrics. \_\_\_\_



2 Listen to a meeting at an advertising agency between Simon and Vicky, and their boss, Martin. They are discussing whether staff should be allowed to listen to music at work. Check your answers to exercise 1.

3 Answer the questions.

- 1 Was Martin surprised to hear protests about the decision to ban music?
- 2 Who didn't want to listen to music during surgical operations?
- 3 Why doesn't Martin want workers using headphones? What will they use?
- 4 What kind of work is listening to music most helpful for?
- 5 What does music 'use up' with people who have attention deficit disorder?
- 6 What kind of music is best for people to listen to while working?

Listen again and check.

4 Match the words and phrases from the listening with their definitions.

- |                     |   |
|---------------------|---|
| 1 kickback          | a taking your attention away from something                     |
| 2 taken aback       | b the frequency with which people leave a company               |
| 3 slackers          | c resistance  |
| 4 counter-intuitive | d removal of doubts and fears                                   |
| 5 deficit           | e a refusal to allow something in all cases, with no exceptions |
| 6 disorder          | f lazy workers  |
| 7 distracting       | g to accept something unpopular                                 |
| 8 reassurance       | h the opposite of what you'd expect                             |
| 9 to police         | i not enough of something                                       |
| 10 blanket ban      | j very surprised  |
| 11 staff turnover   | k a health problem  |
| 12 to stomach       | l to make sure that a rule is being followed                    |

## Phrasal verbs

### 9 Verbs with a particle and a preposition

Complete the sentences with the correct tense of a verb in **A** plus a particle and preposition in **B**. Use each verb *once*, and each pair in **B** three times.

A	B
come	go
end	keep
face	look
feel	put
	pull
	run
	stand
	talk
	in for (x3)
	out of (x3)
	up to (x3)
	up with (x3)

- Oh no, we've run out of coffee! I'll go and get some from the corner shop.
- A** Are you going to Mick's party tonight?  
**B** No, I don't really \_\_\_\_\_ it. I'm tired and I've got a bit of a headache.
- Alan is off work today, so I'm \_\_\_\_\_ him at the meeting.
- You can't just do whatever you want now you're a dad – you have to \_\_\_\_\_ your responsibilities.
- I was going to resign from my job, but my boss managed to \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ it.
- I didn't have much luck investing in the stock market. I \_\_\_\_\_ less money than I started with!
- Many international corporations have \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of criticism for paying so little tax in the countries they operate in.
- I think teachers need to make it very clear that they won't \_\_\_\_\_ any bad behaviour in class.
- I prefer individual sports like squash and tennis. I don't really \_\_\_\_\_ team sports.
- Following problems with his car, Hamilton has had to \_\_\_\_\_ this weekend's Formula One™ race.
- Could you have a word with Sarah? I know she really \_\_\_\_\_ you, so she'll listen to your advice.
- I enjoy going out with my cycling group, but they often go so fast, it's difficult to \_\_\_\_\_ them.



## Pronunciation (2)

### 10 Stress and intonation

A 'golden rule' on intonation:

Find the key word in a sentence or phrase that has the absolute main stress, and if it has more than one syllable, identify which one carries the stress. Generally, up until this key syllable, the intonation rises ... and then immediately falls away.

- Listen and repeat.

I'm thinking of going to the theatre on Saturday.

I'll give you a call when I've finished my work.

- Underline the word or syllable which you think has the main stress in these sentences, and draw an arrow for the rise and fall in the sentence. Practise saying the sentences out loud.

- You need patience to deal with children.
- I need to buy a new shirt to go with these trousers.
- What time does the supermarket open?
- I think we should walk back to the hotel.
- Yes, I'd love to go out with you.
- I'd like a bit more milk in this coffee.
- We've heard it's going to be fantastic!
- I wonder what the doctor said about Harry's shoulder?
- I think you need to be more open-minded.
- Would you like another piece of chocolate cake?

- Listen, compare and repeat the sentences.

- In these exclamation words, too, the tone will rise towards the stressed syllable, and then fall. Underline the stressed syllable and practise saying them with a *lot* of intonation!

- |                  |                  |
|------------------|------------------|
| 1 Phenomenal!    | 6 Inconceivable! |
| 2 Unbelievable!  | 7 Astronomical!  |
| 3 Ridiculous!    | 8 Fascinating!   |
| 4 Revolutionary! | 9 Unprecedented! |
| 5 Extraordinary! | 10 Sensational!  |

- Listen to the lines 1–10 and reply using 'That's ...' + the exclamations 1–10. Then listen and repeat.

- A** I got 99% in my French test!  
**B** That's phenomenal!

# 10

- Distancing the facts • Reporting with passive verbs • *seem* and *appear*
- Words to do with the body
  - Prepositions in passive sentences
  - Intonation in question tags

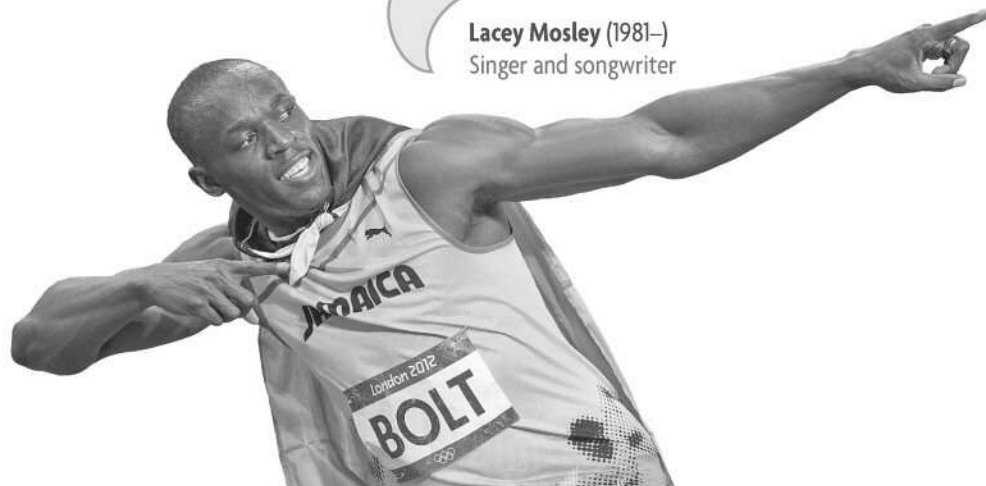
## Body and mind

I'm in good shape.  
That shape is round.

Jarod Kintz (1982–)  
Writer

You see what kills your  
body, but you don't see what  
kills your soul.

Lacey Mosley (1981–)  
Singer and songwriter



## Distancing the facts

### 1 Reporting with passive verbs

Rewrite the sentences using the verbs in brackets in passive constructions.

- Usain Bolt is the fastest man in history. (consider)  
Usain Bolt is considered to be the fastest man in history.
- He has reached speeds of 44 km per hour. (report)  
He \_\_\_\_\_.
- His speed results from an unusually long stride. (assume)  
It \_\_\_\_\_.
- 90% of his energy is used combatting wind resistance. (estimate)  
It \_\_\_\_\_.
- He is earning more than \$20m a year from sponsorship deals. (think)  
He \_\_\_\_\_.
- He eats chicken nuggets before a big race. (know)  
He \_\_\_\_\_.
- He could end his career with a record number of Olympic gold medals. (expect)  
He \_\_\_\_\_.
- He's a late riser, getting up at 10.00 most days. (say)  
He \_\_\_\_\_.
- He once considered playing for Manchester United. (report)  
He \_\_\_\_\_.
- He was also a keen cricket player before turning to athletics. (know)  
He \_\_\_\_\_.

### 2 *seem* and *appear*

Rewrite the sentences with *seem* and *appear* using different structures. Some need infinitive with *to*, others need a *that* clause.

- It seems that he died of a heart attack.  
He seems to have died of a heart attack.
- She appears to be recovering from her stroke.  
It appears that she's recovering from her stroke.
- The winning cyclist seemed to have been using drugs.  
It \_\_\_\_\_.
- It appeared that all of the patients had been given placebos.  
All \_\_\_\_\_.
- Her knee would appear to have healed satisfactorily.  
It \_\_\_\_\_.
- It seems that he's planning to retire soon.  
He \_\_\_\_\_.
- It would appear that many antibiotics are losing their effectiveness.  
Many \_\_\_\_\_.
- His hearing seems to be getting worse.  
It \_\_\_\_\_.

### 3 Monique Van Der Vorst

Read the story of the Dutch cyclist, Monique Van Der Vorst. Use the first verb in brackets (in the passive where appropriate), followed by the correct form of the second verb.

# A wonder on two wheels



When Monique Van Der Vorst suffered ankle strain as a 13-year-old, it <sup>1</sup> was assumed she had been overdoing (assume/overdo) her enthusiasm for sports – hockey, tennis, running, and cycling. Sadly, complications from an ankle operation resulted in paralysis in one leg. She <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (think/suffer) from muscular dystrophy, and later lost movement in her right leg, too.

It <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (seem/be) impossible for Monique not to have a sporting challenge, and so she entered her first handcycle race in 2000. She <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (not expect/do) well as a newcomer, but amazingly, came first and went on to win many world titles.

In early 2008 she was involved in a serious car accident and had to be transported to hospital by helicopter, where it <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (conclude/suffer) from paraplegia. She <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (suppose/compete) in the Paralympic Games in Beijing later that year, and incredibly, still made it there to win two silver medals.


While training in 2010 for the next Paralympics, Monique was hit by another cyclist and thrown off her handcycle, in what at first <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (appear/be) yet another tragic accident. Her legs went into spasm, and she was hospitalized with severe back pain. However, as she recovered, she began to feel sensation in her feet, and after gradually regaining full use of her legs, she <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (judge/be) ineligible for the London 2012 Paralympics. She <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (say/have) mixed feelings about losing her status as a top Paralympian, but soon took to the challenge of racing for an able-bodied cycling team.

Unfortunately, while her story <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (consider/be) miraculous by some, she <sup>11</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (also allege/exaggerate) her previous disability. Experts have, however, confirmed that while it <sup>12</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (appear/be) extremely rare, it <sup>13</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (know/be) possible for paralysis victims to regain use of their legs. Though very real, Monique's problems <sup>14</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (now believe/be) not in her spinal cord, but in her brain connections, as a result of the severe traumas she suffered.



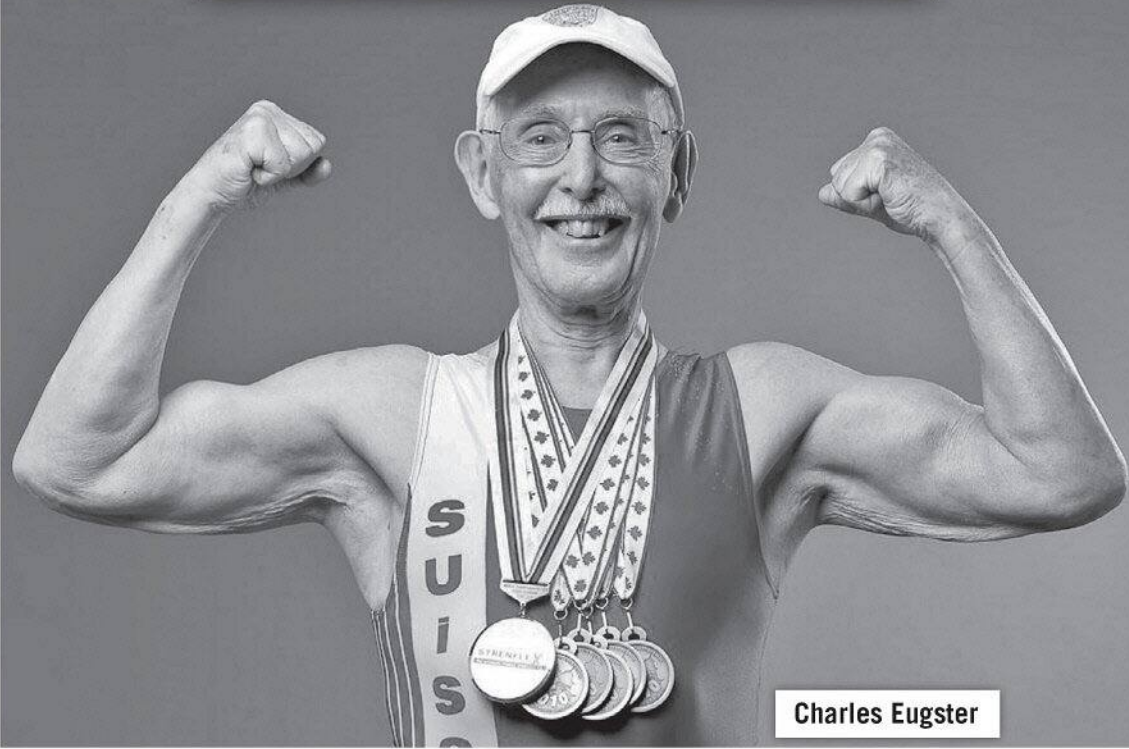
Reading

4 Charles Eugster

- 1 Look at the photo of Charles Eugster. Would you guess he was ...?
- a 68      b 76      c 84      d 93
- 2  Read and listen to the text and check. In which of these phases of his life has he been happy with his health? Put a tick (✓).
- ☐ 6–12      ☐ 13–39      ☐ 40s  
☐ 60s      ☐ 85      ☐ 86–93
- 3 In which of the life phases in exercise 2 does Charles say that he ...?
- 1 competed in a water sport
  - 2 first experienced being elderly
  - 3 had an operation
  - 4 started working out seriously
  - 5 made a promise to himself
  - 6 felt mortality approaching
  - 7 was jealous of someone else's physique
  - 8 sat down a lot
  - 9 got positive attention from females
  - 10 lacked colour and wasn't very dynamic
- 4 All the words in **A** and **B** are from the text. Match words from **A** and **B** to make near synonyms.

A	B
1 older contestant	a bodybuilding
2 frail	b muscular
3 die	c let yourself go
4 old	d chronic
5 win	e past it
6 take up	f sickly
7 constant	g pass away
8 strong	h veteran
9 become overweight	i triumph
10 weightlifting	j sign up for

THE  
VETERAN  
BODYBUILDER



Charles Eugster

“I was a very sickly child. From the age of six I had constant headaches and chronic tonsillitis\*. I became pale, sluggish and my growth was slow. I remember noticing one day that my best friend, who was a year younger than me, was slightly taller and that I was very upset about it.

At 13, I had my tonsils removed and as my health improved, everything changed. I shot up and suddenly I was full of energy. I thought back to myself as a frail, sickly boy, and vowed never to be like that again. I took up boxing, rowing, and rugby. Staying fit and strong became my priority.

After school I trained to be a dentist, but sport remained an important hobby. I only once let myself go. As I crept into my 40s, I adopted my wife's sedentary lifestyle. We spent a lot of time doing nothing. Inevitably, my blood pressure plummeted and one day I felt a sharp pain in my legs – only to discover the dark, earthworm-like patterns of varicose veins\* across my calves. It was my first brush with old age, and I didn't like it. Immediately I resumed rowing to stay fit.

Life went on. At 60, I discovered veteran's rowing and started competing internationally, eventually winning 36 gold medals. I'm not a particularly talented sportsman, but I've always been a great trier. At 75, many of my friends began to pass away. People were getting older around me, but I was only just ready to retire.

Then at 85 I had a crisis. I looked at myself in the mirror one day, and saw an old man. I was overweight, my posture was terrible and there was skin hanging off me where muscle used to be. I looked like a wreck. I started to consider the fact that I was probably going to die soon. I knew I

was supposed to slow down, but I'm vain. I missed my old body and wanted to be able to strut across the beach, turning heads. So in my late 80s I joined a bodybuilding club.

There's no research into bodybuilding for the over-80s, so it's been an experiment. With weightlifting and protein shakes, my body began to change. It became broader, more v-shaped, and my shoulders and biceps became more defined. People began to comment on how much younger I looked, and my new muscular frame drew a lot of admiring glances from women.

Everything I learned was tailored to help my body cope with old age. I took up judo to teach me how to fall properly. My circulation and posture improved, and I was told that there was a chance more muscle mass could protect my brain from Alzheimer's. I stopped thinking about dying. As I approached 90, my focus was on getting my body back.

In 2008, I signed up for my first championship. I was nervous, but although I was the oldest contestant by about 20 years, everyone was very welcoming. I got higher scores than all the women taking part, and a lot of the men. Then, at an event in Germany, I triumphed, scoring higher than any contestant in any age category for my 57 dips, 62 chin-ups, 50 push-ups, and 48 abdominal crunches, each in 45 seconds. As I'm over 70, they did make allowances – I could do the push-ups on my knees for example – but I proved I wasn't past it.

I'm not chasing youthfulness. I'm chasing health. To me, a 65-year-old is young. Yes, one day something will happen and that will be it. But until that day comes, I'm going to carry on working on my abs\*. ”



\*tonsillitis = swelling of the tonsils in the throat at the back of the tongue

\*varicose veins = enlarged veins, often purple

\*abs = abdominal muscles

## Vocabulary

### 5 Words to do with the body

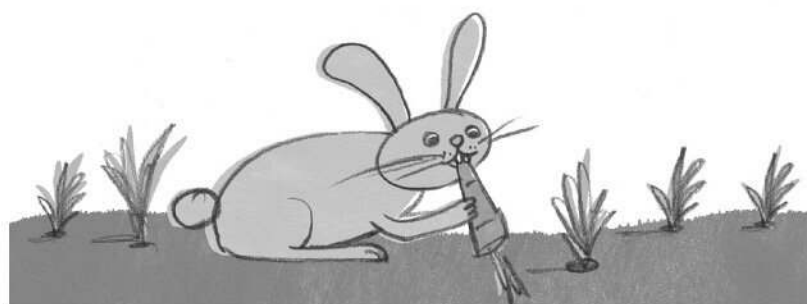
- 1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of verbs in the box.

wink	squeeze	munch	slap	pat	rub	pinch
stroke	nudge	shove				

- I couldn't believe we'd got the winning lottery numbers – I had to \_\_\_\_\_ myself to make sure I wasn't dreaming!
- We knew that Phillip wasn't being serious, because he \_\_\_\_\_ at us.
- I tried to stop the robber escaping, but he was big, and \_\_\_\_\_ me out of the way.
- I knew I'd said something wrong. My wife \_\_\_\_\_ me with her elbow so hard that I nearly spilt my tea.



- Tom looked very thoughtful as he sat \_\_\_\_\_ his beard.
- OK, maybe I was bit rude to her, but that's no excuse for \_\_\_\_\_ me in the face!
- \_\_\_\_\_ the juice from two lemons and add it to the mixture.
- I know your eyes are itching, but try not to \_\_\_\_\_ them – you'll just make them even redder.
- Dan \_\_\_\_\_ the little boy on the head and gave him a pound for behaving so well.
- Yeah, I know little bunny rabbits are cute, but not when they're \_\_\_\_\_ away on the carrots in my garden!



## 2 Answer the questions with words in the box.

lips	arms	jaw	shoulder
heart	feet	neck	knees
thumb	mouth	nose	throat

Which part(s) of your body ...

- do you blow when you have a cold? nose
- waters when you see delicious food?
- do you land on when you're lucky in life?
- do you go down on to beg forgiveness?
- are sealed when you keep a secret?
- do you stick out when you take a risk?
- do you get a lump in when you want to cry?
- do little children suck?
- do you put round someone to comfort them?
- sinks when you get some disappointing news?
- drops when you hear something astonishing?
- do you look over when you feel paranoid?

## 6 Expressions with parts of the body

Choose the correct option for the expressions with parts of the body.

- If you've raised a few eyebrows, have you *amused/shocked/confused* people?
- When the answer to a question is a no-brainer, is it *obvious/tricky/impossible*?
- If you keep a stiff upper lip, are your emotions *fierce/constant/hidden*?
- When something sends shivers down your spine, are you *cold/afraid/exhausted*?
- If something is a sight for sore eyes, is it *pleasurable/painful/annoying* to see?
- When you decide to play it by ear in a meeting, do you *listen carefully/go without a plan/not take it seriously*?
- If you lose face, do you worry people will show you less *affection/sympathy/respect*?
- When you let your hair down, is your behaviour *wild/lazy/disorganized*?
- If you say something tongue-in-cheek, are you being *tactful/dishonest/ironic*?
- When it's time to knuckle down, do you need to *work hard/get angry/do less*?
- If something sticks in your throat, is it difficult to *enjoy/accept/believe*?
- When someone is in your face, are they being *honest/confrontational/open*?

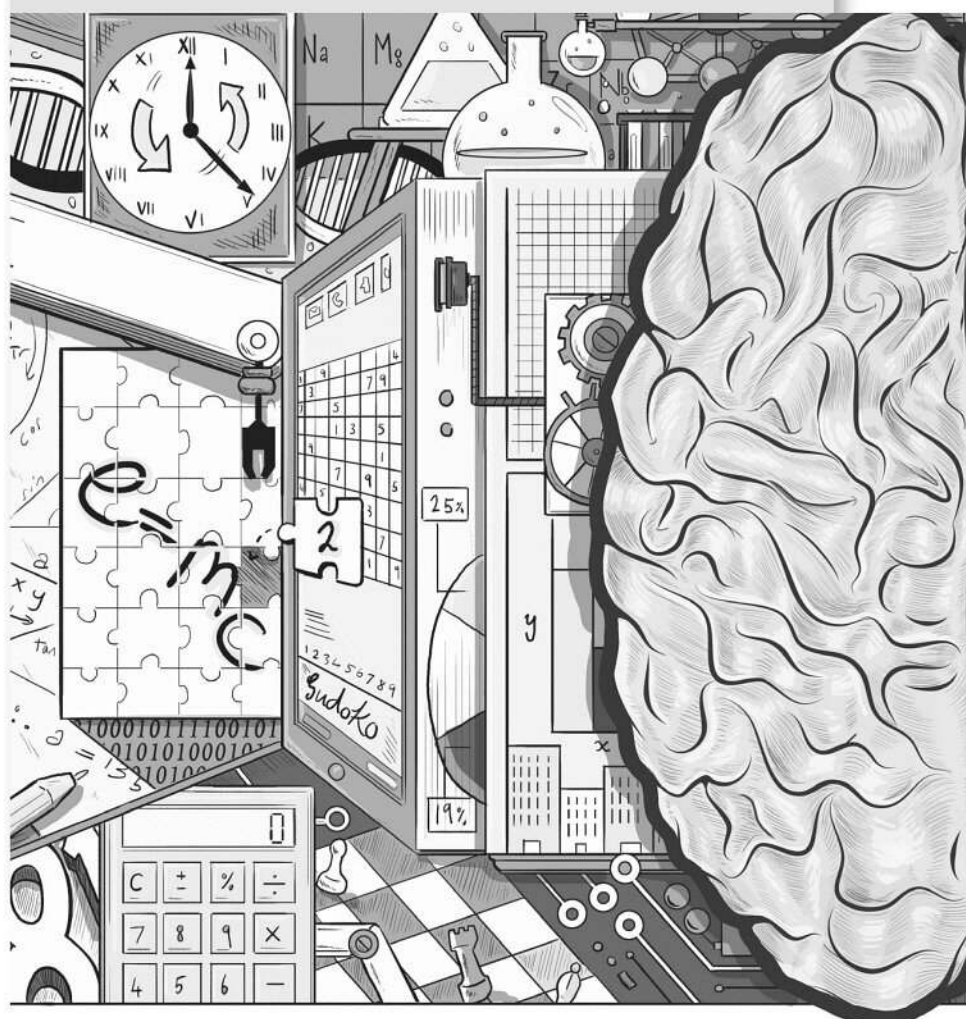
## Listening



### 7 The human brain

1 Do the quiz. Circle the correct option.

## How much do you know about the brain?

- The human brain is \_\_\_\_\_ as big as the brain of other mammals with the same body size.  
a twice                      b three times
- The human brain is around \_\_\_\_\_ in weight.  
a 1.5kg                      b 2.5kg
- Our brains use up \_\_\_\_\_ of our body's energy.  
a 10%                      b 20%
- A cat's brain has a thousand times more data storage than an iPad, and can act on it a \_\_\_\_\_ times more quickly.  
a thousand                      b million
- Our brain is \_\_\_\_\_ active during the night than during the day.  
a more                      b less
- Our brains stop growing at \_\_\_\_\_ years old.  
a 18                      b 40
- The brain needs to burn \_\_\_\_\_ to function.  
a fat                      b glucose
- We \_\_\_\_\_ born with our full quota of brain cells.  
a aren't                      b are



- 2  Listen to a radio interview with an expert on the human brain, and check your answers to the quiz.
- 3  Try to answer the questions. Then listen again and check or complete them.
- 1 What does the human brain weigh roughly the same as?
  - 2 What could you power with the electricity produced by the human brain?
  - 3 When does the brain get switched off?
  - 4 What is one of the functions that the right hemisphere of the brain specializes in?
  - 5 Who has the most even balance of brain hemispheres – right- or left-handed people?
  - 6 What percentage of people are left-handed?
  - 7 How much of the brain is fat?
  - 8 What kind of exercise is good for the brain?
- 4 Find pairs of antonyms in the words and phrases from the interview.

1 to leave someone in the dark about something	a sluggish
2 to generate	b a no-no
3 routine	c to break down
4 agile	d to shed light on
5 clear-cut	e extraordinary
6 a must	f to use up
7 to continue to develop	g rough



## Prepositions

### 8 Prepositions in passive sentences

- 1 Match a verb in A with a phrase in B.

A	B
1 accuse someone	a against someone
2 warn someone	b to an unpleasant experience
3 congratulate someone	c at someone
4 deal	d in a project
5 force someone	e on a promotion
6 be involved	f for a service
7 hold something	g about a danger
8 shout	h of lying
9 subject someone	i with a problem
10 charge someone	j into doing something

- 2 Complete the sentences with one of the verb + preposition combinations from exercise 1, with the verb in the correct form of the passive.
- 1 I left my last job because the boss was such a bully. I was fed up with being shouted at.
  - 2 All complaints will \_\_\_\_\_ promptly by our Customer Service department.
  - 3 Luckily we \_\_\_\_\_ how cold it can get in Greece during winter, so we had lots of warm clothes with us.
  - 4 I haven't even got a mirror in the house, so vanity is not something I can \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 5 Just say no! Don't allow yourself to \_\_\_\_\_ emotional blackmail.
  - 6 I think children should *choose* to play sport – it's not something they should \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 7 I don't want to go on this protest if there's going to be criminal damage – it's not something I want to \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 8 The first drink is free, but all other drinks will \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 9 The speed with which this company has been turned around is something you should all \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 10 Just admit to the interviewers that you're relatively new to this field – it won't \_\_\_\_\_ you.

# Pronunciation

## 9 Intonation in question tags

The intonation on question tags goes down ↘ if the speaker is just checking information and up ↗ if the speaker is not sure.

- 1 Read these questions. Do you think the intonation on the tag will naturally rise ↗ or fall ↘?  
Write **R** for rise and **F** for fall.
  - 1 Lovely day, isn't it? \_\_\_\_\_
  - 2 I'm so sorry. I'm late, aren't I? \_\_\_\_\_
  - 3 You haven't seen my car keys anywhere, have you? \_\_\_\_\_
  - 4 You're angry with me, aren't you? I can tell. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 5 You couldn't give me a lift to the airport, could you? \_\_\_\_\_
  - 6 Drive carefully dear, won't you? \_\_\_\_\_
  - 7 George Clooney didn't win the Oscar, did he? \_\_\_\_\_
  - 8 I think it's time to call it a day, isn't it? \_\_\_\_\_
  - 9 Helen's the twin wearing the pink dress, isn't she? \_\_\_\_\_
  - 10 You haven't got another parking ticket, have you? \_\_\_\_\_



Now listen and check your ideas. Practise saying the sentences.

- 2 Read the conversations. Write in the correct auxiliary or question tag. Will the intonation rise or fall? Write **R** or **F**.

1

A We had a holiday in Scotland. It rained a lot.

B But you had a good time, <sup>1</sup> didn't you? **R**

A Oh yes, the countryside's stunning, <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_?

B It certainly <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. The mountains just take your breath away.

A They <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_?

2

A Phew! I'm exhausted – but it was a brilliant party, <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ it?

B It certainly was. The kids had a great time.

A They <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_?

B They're all in Miss Bennet's class, you know.

A Miss Bennet? She's a good teacher, <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ she?

B I think so. The kids like her, anyway.

3

A You haven't seen my red scarf, <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ you?

B I saw Jane wearing a red scarf.

A She hasn't borrowed it again, <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ she? She's always taking my stuff.

B Surely she asks you first, <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ she?

A She <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ not! I hate my sister.

4

A I thought Oliver O'Dell was great in that play. He's a great actor, <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ he?

B He <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. But I've heard he's been having a lot of problems lately.

A He's been having problems, <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ he? I had no idea.

B Yes, his third wife walked out on him.

A So, he was married three times, <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ he?

B Yes, and he has a drink problem.

A Oh, he <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ he? Poor guy.

B Yes. Didn't you see his hand shaking?

A <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ it? You don't miss anything, <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ you?

Listen and check.

# 11

- Future forms • Shades of meaning • Future in the past
- Phrasal verbs: literal and metaphorical • Technology idioms
- Sounds and spelling: homophones

## Our high-tech world

Technology can be our best friend, and also be the biggest party pooper of our lives. It interrupts our ability to have a thought or a daydream, because we're too busy bridging the walk from the cafeteria back to the office on the cell phone.

Steven Spielberg (1946–)  
Film director

## Future forms

### 1 Names and uses

Match the names of the future forms in **A** with a sentence in **B** and their uses in **C**. Sometimes a form has more than one use.

A	B	C
Present Continuous	1 The lecture <b>starts/will start</b> at ten o'clock.	a an arrangement between people
Present Simple	2 I'm <b>going to study</b> engineering at university.	b a planned intention
will + infinitive	3 I feel dizzy. I think I'm <b>going to faint</b> .	c a spontaneous intention
going to + infinitive	4 I know <b>you'll enjoy</b> the party.	d a (timetabled) future fact
Future Continuous	5 I'm <b>meeting</b> Tom for coffee.	e a simple prediction
Future Perfect	6 <b>Will you be seeing</b> Sally for lunch as usual?	f a prediction based on strong present evidence
Future in the past	7 Don't call at 7.00 – I'll <b>be getting</b> ready to go out.	g an action which will be completed before a definite time
	8 I'll <b>call</b> tomorrow morning if you like.	h the future seen from a point in the past
	9 <b>We were going to have</b> a picnic, but it rained.	i a future activity which will be in progress at a certain time
	10 <b>They'll have decorated</b> the whole house by May.	j an action that will happen in the normal course of events

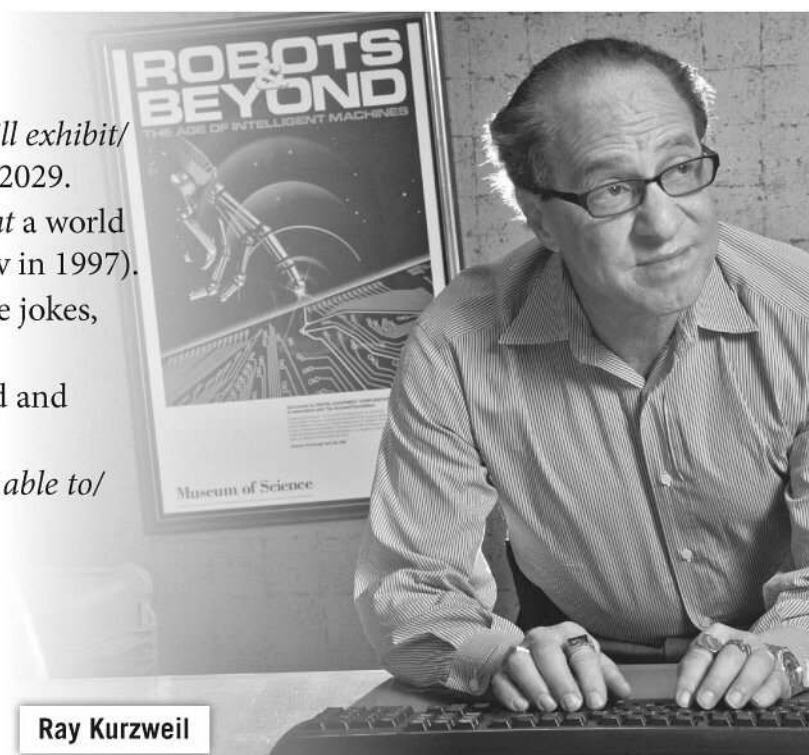
### 2 Shades of meaning

Underline the future form which is most appropriate.

- Scientist and futurologist Ray Kurzweil predicts that a computer *will exhibit/will have exhibited* intelligent behaviour equal to that of a human by 2029.
- In 1990 he predicted that a computer *was going to defeat/would defeat* a world chess champion by 1998 (an IBM computer defeated Garry Kasparov in 1997).
- He believes that in 15 years' time computers *can/will be able to* make jokes, tell stories, and even flirt.
- In order to do this, computers *will have had to/will be having to* read and absorb everything on the web.
- When they *have read/will have read* everything on the web they *are able to/will be able to* engage in intelligent dialogue.
- A** I hear the professor *is giving/gives* a lecture on Friday evening.  
*Will you go/Will you be going?*

**B** Yes, *I'm going/I'll go*. It *starts/will start* at seven o'clock. *I'll see/I'm going to see* you there.

**A** Great! *I'll give/I'm going to give* you a lift if you like.



Ray Kurzweil

### 3 Other future expressions

The expressions *be to*, *be due to*, *be about to* can also express the future. Look at these sentences.

- Which is a formal news report? Which means 'very close in time'? Which means 'expected'?
  - The taxi **is due (to arrive)** in 20 minutes.
  - The President **is to make** a state visit to London next March.
  - I'm **about to lose** patience with you.
- What other future forms could replace the expressions in a–c? Note the different shades of meaning.

- Complete the sentences with the verbs below. Use *be to*, *be due to*, or *be about to* and one other possible future form.

begin land leave meet lose offer (passive)

- The next train to Birmingham New Street is due to leave / leaves from platform 8 in five minutes. We apologize for the delay to this service.
- So your plane \_\_\_\_\_ / \_\_\_\_\_ at 6.20? Fine, John and I will be waiting for you in Arrivals.
- EU ministers \_\_\_\_\_ / \_\_\_\_\_ in Brussels next week to discuss the worldwide monetary crisis.
- Turn off your phone! The show \_\_\_\_\_ / \_\_\_\_\_.
- All over-60s \_\_\_\_\_ / \_\_\_\_\_ additional flu vaccinations this winter.
- Not again! I \_\_\_\_\_ / \_\_\_\_\_ my temper with this computer. The screen keeps freezing.



My mum says I'll soon be too old for an imaginary friend, but she's got lots on Facebook.

### 4 Future in the past

Use the verb in brackets to complete the sentences in an appropriate form to express the future in the past.



- His mum didn't worry when Jack went on holiday with all his mates. She knew he would behave (behave) sensibly.
- The traffic warden \_\_\_\_\_ (give) me a ticket, but I persuaded him not to.
- The lecture began badly. I hoped it \_\_\_\_\_ (get) better, but it just got worse and worse.
- Hi! Last time I saw you, you \_\_\_\_\_ (emigrate) to Canada? Did you?
- My brother's train \_\_\_\_\_ (arrive) at 18.05, but it was cancelled.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ just \_\_\_\_\_ (complain) when our meal finally arrived.
- Can you explain again how you did this on your computer? You \_\_\_\_\_ (show) me when we were rudely interrupted.
- Becky! Oh dear! I forgot you \_\_\_\_\_ (come) to supper. I haven't got a thing to eat. Never mind. Come in.

# Listening

## 5 The future from the past



- 1 You are going to listen to the beginning of a plenary session at the Future Worlds Conference in the US. The speakers talk about predictions for the future made by these people in the past.

- |   |                           |
|---|---------------------------|
| A | an engineer in 1900       |
| B | a feminist writer in 1929 |
| C | schoolchildren in 1968    |

Who (A, B or C) said that in the future we would ... ?

- 1 be able to fly to work \_\_\_\_\_
  - 2 fly to the moon for a picnic \_\_\_\_\_
  - 3 have fresh fruit and vegetables all year round \_\_\_\_\_
  - 4 swallow a pill instead of a meal \_\_\_\_\_
  - 5 have no cars in city centres \_\_\_\_\_
  - 6 spend less time on cooking and housework \_\_\_\_\_
  - 7 live in underwater bubble homes \_\_\_\_\_
  - 8 grow giant strawberries \_\_\_\_\_
  - 9 have more equality of the sexes \_\_\_\_\_
  - 10 send digital photos wirelessly worldwide \_\_\_\_\_
  - 11 all walk about ten miles a day \_\_\_\_\_
  - 12 be travelling in hover cars by 2068 \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Listen and check your ideas. Correct any you got wrong.

- 3 Listen again. Mark these sentences true (✓) or false (X). Correct the false ones.

### A John Elfreth Watkins ...

- 1 accurately predicted the changes in human lifespan and growth patterns.
- 2 believed that we would all have huge refrigerators in our homes.
- 3 thought that higher education would be free to everybody.
- 4 believed that more and more people would move to the cities.



### B Josephine Daskam Bacon ...

- 5 was a science fiction author, who wrote novels about women's lives in 50 years' time.
- 6 believed her granddaughters would be able to cope with both jobs and running the home.
- 7 doubted that technology would make future women happier with their lot.



### C The Pennsylvanian schoolchildren ...

- 8 buried a time capsule which was dug up prematurely.
- 9 wrote stories about living on the moon.
- 10 predicted space tourism.



- 4 These lines are very similar to those in the audio. Listen again and replace the words in *italics* with the words used in the discussion.
- 1 We are taking a break from discussing technological *advances*.
  - 2 We are going to use three topics as a *launch* to our discussion.
  - 3 The article was *charmingly* called 'What may happen in the next hundred years.'
  - 4 He couldn't possibly have had *an idea* of them.
  - 5 I recently came across a *minor* author who wrote a similar article.
  - 6 Many feminists *passionately* hoped for the invention of a 'meal-in-a-pill'.
  - 7 Young women quickly *started to like* the radio, much to the *disappointment* of the male population.
  - 8 She also *foresaw* women flying to their jobs in little planes.


## Reading

### 6 Future technology

- 1 Look at the titles of four short newspaper articles about potential technological advances.

Which do you think is about ... ?

- a new fail-safe way of connecting by phone
- monitoring our health
- learning how to programme for ourselves
- using our bodies as passwords

- 2  Read and listen to the articles and complete each one with a line from below.

- 1 And if they go down, your immediate means of communication go with it.
- 2 Within a decade we could all become our own doctors.
- 3 It seems we are delighted to be able to control our own technology, given the chance.
- 4 Will we ever be able to simplify our complicated technological world?

# Technology— what next?



## A THERE'S AN AURA THAT'S ONLY YOU

How many passwords do you currently have for cards, gadgets, and online accounts? How many times have you forgotten a password and had to come up with a new one? Electronic security is now a major headache as we attempt to keep our devices and personal details safe from increasingly sophisticated hackers.

<sup>a</sup> \_\_\_\_\_  
Cambridge computer expert Frank Stajano believes so. He and his team are researching an 'electronic aura' – an electronic field around our bodies that would activate our, and only our, gadgets. To create it we would insert microchips in our clothes, glasses, jewellery, and even under our skin. Outside our personal 'aura', our computer, tablet, smartphone, bank cards, car keys, etc. would simply cease to function. To someone else they would just be useless junk.

Stajano is also developing a tiny gadget which you hold, called a 'pico' after the Italian philosopher Giovanni Pico, revered for his extraordinary memory. A pico would be capable of remembering thousands of passwords and login names. With it you could instantly interact with any number of devices and websites by holding it near. Again, outside your aura field, your pico wouldn't operate. 'The problem with computer passwords is only going to get worse,' said Stajano. 'With our pico project we are going for the long-term solution.'

## B 'MESHING' BETTER TOGETHER

Whatever did we do without our mobiles? Countless lives have been saved since the advent of mobile phones, due to the speed with which the emergency services can now be contacted. But unfortunately, this is not always the case. As various incidents worldwide – terrorist attacks, hurricanes, tsunamis – have demonstrated, telecom services can be the first to collapse or be overloaded in a crisis.

<sup>b</sup> \_\_\_\_\_  
Professor Jonathan Zittrain of Harvard University thinks we have the capability to build a new type of system called a 'mesh network' to solve this problem. Currently, if you want to get through to somebody, you connect to a data network via a nearby phone mast through your carrier, which then connects you to that person. But what if your phone could connect directly with another mobile phone without an intermediary? Like passing a bucket of water along a chain of people to put out a fire, we could pass information along our phones in the same way.

This 'mesh network' would allow phones to connect with each other if regular systems failed. Apps could be built into phones and networks, which would allow people to connect in a crisis, help each other, and potentially save more lives.

3 Answer the questions.

- A 1 Why would an 'electronic aura' work as a password?  
2 How did the 'pico' get its name? When would it stop working?
- B 3 How is the 'mesh network' like a bucket of water?  
4 When would a 'mesh network' start to operate?
- C 5 How might future devices differ from current ones?  
6 How could implanting sensors into our bodies reduce healthcare costs?
- D 7 Why is *Raspberry Pi* so popular?  
8 How might learning how to program computers make us happier?

4 Find words in the texts which can replace the words in *italics*.

- A 1 I wish scientists could *invent* a way to feed the world's hungry.  
2 That car boot sale was hopeless. It was full of *rubbish*.
- B 3 Did you manage *to make that call* to the manufacturers and register your complaint?  
4 That's the third time they've used the excuse that their computers *have crashed*.
- C 5 My kids can't remember a time when all these gadgets weren't just *everyday* things.  
6 The number of people suffering from diabetes has *increased dramatically* recently.
- D 7 My son has to *stay abreast of* all the latest technological developments in his job.  
8 We met Matt's new girlfriend but I'm afraid we *didn't warm to* her at all.

## C GETTING UNDER YOUR SKIN

We are already used to gadgets that track our health. Already commonplace are wearable devices to monitor our movement, heart rate, and sleep patterns. So the potential next step in healthcare is to go one better than that. In the near future, people could be implanted with tiny electronic sensors beneath their skin and in their brains to collect detailed personal information about the state of their health.

Researchers in the USA have already developed a hydrogel that can be applied under the skin like a tattoo. This gel monitors the nitric oxide in your body, low levels of which are an early indicator of heart or lung problems. Other sensors are already able to monitor transplants or activate prosthetic limbs. Although we are still some way off being able to monitor general health, researchers believe that, with spiralling healthcare costs, this may be the only way forward.

Constant data about our bodies could detect the onset of diseases so they may be caught and dealt with early thereby saving costs. And it could revolutionize our attitude to health. We would become very aware of how diet and lifestyle choices affected our physical well-being. <sup>c</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.

## D DOING IT YOURSELF

Do you feel rather overwhelmed by technology these days? Are you struggling to keep up with technological advances? Over the last twenty years, many of us have become alienated by new technology – feeling frightened of it rather than enabled by it.

Twenty years ago, computers were still simple enough that people could learn to program them. It gave them a feeling of power over their devices. Now our gadgets are non-programmable, or so complicated that it takes at least a college degree to understand how they work.

Eben Upton, though, wants us to return to a simpler time. His project, *Raspberry Pi*, has produced an inexpensive, credit-card-sized computer that he had hoped would encourage schools to teach children how to program. In fact, not only children, but also adults have taken to the new computer with alacrity.

<sup>d</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.

Upton hopes this will herald a new era of self-programming, where people can see their ideas become reality through their own efforts, without selling out to large, faceless corporations. If more people were able to operate technology sufficiently to work for themselves, then we would eventually become a smaller, more personal society again. Upton believes that regaining control over our destinies would lead to a huge increase in our happiness and well-being.

# Phrasal verbs

## 7 Literal and metaphorical meanings

Some phrasal verbs have both literal and metaphorical meanings. Sometimes the literal can help the understanding of the metaphorical.

- He lost control of the car and **ran into** a tree.
- You **run into** trouble when you add too many extra functions and perplex the users.

Complete sentences 1–14 with the correct form of the phrasal verbs below.

come up with    see through    go down    keep up with  
stand up for    take to    get through

### Literal meaning

- 1 You are not allowed to \_\_\_\_\_ the escalator with a buggy.
- 2 How did the thieves \_\_\_\_\_ the window without breaking it?
- 3 The whole audience \_\_\_\_\_ the final curtain call, cheering wildly.
- 4 Slow down! I can't \_\_\_\_\_ you. Your legs are longer than mine.
- 5 He went down to the cellar and \_\_\_\_\_ two bottles of the finest wine.
- 6 It was an absolute cloudburst. I could barely \_\_\_\_\_ the windscreen to drive.
- 7 I'm from Planet Zog. \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ your leader!

### Metaphorical meaning

- 8 I finally \_\_\_\_\_ to an actual human being after two hours on the phone.
- 9 The computer system \_\_\_\_\_, causing chaos.
- 10 I've run out of ideas for passwords. I can't \_\_\_\_\_ any more.
- 11 He had a smooth, superficial charm, but she soon \_\_\_\_\_ this and ditched him.
- 12 Don't let your boss treat you like that. \_\_\_\_\_ your rights!
- 13 My grandfather got a tablet for his 80th birthday and he's \_\_\_\_\_ it in a big way. He's never off it!
- 14 My husband's a real techno geek – he likes to \_\_\_\_\_ all the latest gadgets.

# Vocabulary

## 8 Technology idioms

- 1 Match an idiom in **A** with a meaning in **B**.




A	B
1 push the panic button	a have similar views
2 not rocket science	b lose your temper
3 blow a fuse	c a smooth-running organization
4 get your wires crossed	d waste time devising something that already exists
5 be light years ahead	e work very productively
6 be on the same wavelength	f lose your nerve
7 a well-oiled machine	g spoil a plan
8 fire on all cylinders	h not difficult to understand
9 reinvent the wheel	i have a misunderstanding with someone
10 throw a spanner in the works	j be very advanced

- 2 Underline the most appropriate idiom.

- 1 John Lewis is a hugely efficient and successful department store. It fires on all cylinders/is a well-oiled machine.
- 2 We got on really well from the start – we got our wires crossed/are on the same wavelength.
- 3 I'm firing on all cylinders/blowing a fuse today. I've already written 3,000 words of my dissertation.
- 4 Surely you know how to mend a fuse – it's not rocket science/a well-oiled machine.
- 5 The wedding reception is to be held in the garden. If it rains, it will really push the panic button/throw a spanner in the works.
- 6 Our tablet is much more advanced than our competitors'. It's light years ahead/not rocket science.
- 7 Sorry, I thought we'd arranged to meet next Saturday, not this Saturday. We obviously got our wires crossed/weren't on the same wavelength.
- 8 His wife blew a fuse/threw a spanner in the works when Tom forgot their wedding anniversary.
- 9 Why not use the design we already have? There's no point in reinventing the wheel/getting your wires crossed.
- 10 Your shares have just dipped a bit. There's no need to push the panic button/fire on all cylinders.

# Pronunciation

## 9 Sounds and spelling: homophones

- 1  Read and listen to the poem. What is it about? What has caused all the spelling mistakes?
- 2 Compare the poem with its phonemic transcription. Underline all the words in the transcription which are spelled wrongly in the poem.
- 3 Rewrite the poem without any spelling mistakes.



"Do you run everything through a spell-checker?"

### Eye Have a Spelling Chequer

Eye have a spelling chequer  
It came with my pea sea  
It sikhs to fined four my revue  
Miss steaks eye can knot sea.

Eye strike a quay and type a word  
And weight four it two say  
Weather eye am wrong oar write  
It shows me strait a weigh.

As soon as a mist ache is maid  
It nose bee fore two long  
And eye can put the error rite  
It's in know weigh ever wrong.

Eye have run this poem threw it  
I am shore your pleased two no  
Its letter perfect in it's weigh  
My chequer tolled me sew.

/aɪ hæv ə spelɪŋ tʃekə  
ɪt keɪm wɪð maɪ pi:si:  
ɪt sɪks tə faɪnd fɔː maɪ rɪvjuː  
mɪsteɪks aɪ kənɒt siː/

/aɪ straɪk ə kiː ən taɪp ə wɜːd  
ənd weɪt fɔːrɪt tuː seɪ  
wəðə aɪ æm rɒŋ ɔː raɪt  
ɪt ʃəʊz mi streɪtəweɪ/

/əz suːn əz ə mɪsteɪk ɪz meɪd  
ɪt nəʊz biːfɔː tuː lɒŋ  
ənd aɪ kən pʊt ðɪː erə raɪt  
ɪts ɪn nəʊ weɪ evə rɒŋ/

/aɪ hæv rʌn ðɪs pəʊm θruːwɪt  
aɪ æm ʃɔː jɔː plɪzɪd tə nəʊ  
ɪts letə pɜːfekt ɪn ɪts weɪ  
maɪ tʃekə təʊld miː səʊ/

I have a spelling checker

- 4 Look at the phonemic transcriptions of some homophones. Read them aloud and write two possible spellings for each.

/əlaʊd/ \_\_\_\_\_

/grəʊn/ \_\_\_\_\_

/mɔːnɪŋ/ \_\_\_\_\_

/tʃɪːnz/ \_\_\_\_\_

/mʌsəlz/ \_\_\_\_\_

/beri/ \_\_\_\_\_

- 5 Complete the sentences with one of the words from exercise 4.

- 1 After her husband died, Queen Victoria remained in \_\_\_\_\_ clothes for the rest of her life.
- 2 They say that living to a great age depends on the \_\_\_\_\_ you inherit.
- 3 My boyfriend is doing weightlifting to build up his \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 His jokes just make us \_\_\_\_\_. They're not funny at all.
- 5 If it's a double red line, you're not \_\_\_\_\_ to park there under any circumstances.
- 6 The minister tried to \_\_\_\_\_ the bad news about the economy under loads of statistics.

# 12

Linking devices • Revision • Prepositions in set phrases • Metaphorical language  
• Reading aloud: word linking and intrusive sounds

## Turning points

From a certain point onward there is no longer any turning back. That is the point that must be reached.

Franz Kafka (1883–1924)  
Writer

The turning point in the process of growing up is when you discover the core of strength within you that survives all hurt.

Max Lerner (1902–1992)  
Journalist and educator

## Linking devices

### 1 Revision of linkers

Circle the correct linkers in the text about a man whose life changed dramatically.

## A life turned around by trees

Rob McBride was once a software engineer. He was under a lot of a pressure, and <sup>1</sup> *as a result / seeing as* he pushed himself hard and worked very long hours – <sup>2</sup> *meanwhile / until* the day he had to be carried out of the office.

'I had what my doctor called a classic burn-out. In fact, I say that my head exploded <sup>3</sup> *since / through* modern-day living, stress, pressure of work, family grief all piled on top.' For months, Rob struggled with panic attacks <sup>4</sup> *owing to / as a consequence* massive anxiety, <sup>5</sup> *as well as / what's more* depression.

<sup>6</sup> *Nevertheless, / As a consequence* he was unable to do any work for 18 months. The medication he was given helped, but <sup>7</sup> *all the same, / even though* he didn't want to carry on taking tablets month after month. His doctor suggested getting out into the fresh air and doing some exercise, <sup>8</sup> *as a consequence / so* he started doing voluntary work for the Woodland Trust, a conservation charity.

<sup>9</sup> *Even though / Despite* he was still far from well, <sup>10</sup> *until / as soon as* he entered the woodland, he felt better, and noticed that his pulse and blood pressure went down <sup>11</sup> *while / by the time* he was there. The physical work helped, too. 'We were absolutely built to be physical and out in the greenery, and I noticed that <sup>12</sup> *when / meanwhile* I was doing that, I didn't need



tablets.' <sup>13</sup> *However / Whereas* being worn out from mental work had been stressful, being physically tired was a pleasure.

<sup>14</sup> *While / However* Rob's breakdown was an extreme case, he thinks most people nowadays should spend far less time on their computers, phones, and tablets, <sup>15</sup> *in case / otherwise* they never get to relax properly. He also thinks we need to plant millions more trees <sup>16</sup> *in order that / in order to* give more people access to woodland. Forests are special places, and <sup>17</sup> *once / by the time* anyone enters one, they're completely cut off from modern urban life, and back in a primeval world that feels both magical, and utterly peaceful.

<sup>18</sup> *In the end, / Once* Rob found his life had been transformed, and he now makes his living searching for and recording ancient trees, and giving talks about them. He says he's no 'tree-hugger',

<sup>19</sup> *though / despite* he's often teased with that label.

<sup>20</sup> *Although, / Nevertheless*, he says it's hard to sit under a 4,000-year-old yew tree and not find it a spiritual experience.

## 2 Using contrast linkers

! Some contrast linkers join two contrasting ideas in the same sentence, whereas others introduce the second idea in a separate sentence.

**Although** snow and heavy winds were forecast, the climbers decided to go on.

Snow and heavy winds were forecast. **Nevertheless**, the climbers decided to go on.

Linking in one sentence	Linking over two sentences
Although Despite (Even) though Much as Whereas	All the same, Even so, However, Nevertheless, On the other hand,



Rewrite the sentences using the linkers in brackets.

- 1 I went to bed early last night. *All the same*, I feel really tired today. (even though)

**Even though I went to bed early last night, I feel really tired today.**

- 2 Jeff went bankrupt in his 30s. However, he now runs a very successful online business. (despite)

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

- 3 I tend to be a bit lazy. My sister Monika, on the other hand, is always busy – she can't keep still for a minute. (whereas)

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

- 4 My grandfather can describe in great detail events that took place 50 years ago, even though he often can't remember what he had for breakfast! (however)

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

- 5 Despite not being very well off, Sue gives generously to various charities. (even so)

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

- 6 I admire her, though I find her difficult to get on with. (much as)

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

- 7 I don't agree with some of his policies. Even so, I think he'd make a good Prime Minister. (while)

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

- 8 Even though buying that house should be a good investment, Katie has to remember that the housing market could collapse. (on the other hand)

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

- 9 I don't believe in miracles. Nevertheless, his recovery seems to defy medical explanation. (although)

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

- 10 Despite it being a bit of a wrench for Gio and Liv to leave Oxford, they are looking forward to living in Barbados. (all the same)

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

## Revision

### 3 Finding and correcting mistakes

Eleven of these sentences contain a mistake. Find and correct them. (The unit in which the particular grammar point was covered is given in brackets.)

- 1 I'm frozen! I've worked outside. (U1)
- 2 The experiment went wrongly and had to be terminated. (U2)
- 3 The Jeep was horribly dirty after the journey, so I took it to the car wash. (U2)
- 4 We saw Rodriguez perform at Glastonbury Festival – he was brilliant! (U3)
- 5 I know the traffic noise makes it difficult, but please try paying attention. (U3)
- 6 We needn't have rushed to get to the airport, so we took the scenic route. (U4)
- 7 It could not be warm and sunny tomorrow, so bring something warm to wear. (U4)
- 8 Not everyone can access government services via the Internet, nor should they have to. (U5)
- 9 I'm not enjoying this work trip much. Then again, I wasn't expecting. (U5)
- 10 Rarely I have encountered such rude staff in a four-star hotel. (U6)
- 11 It's nearly midnight! It's about time we left! (U7)
- 12 We'd rather you didn't bring Jo along last night. (U7)
- 13 The exercise that I found hardest was the one on relative clauses. (U8)
- 14 Walking over the bridge, my camera fell in the river! (U8)
- 15 You should go to Ganema beach when you visit Serifos. Mind you, it's easy to find! (U9)
- 16 Have you heard about Christine? Apparently she's going to work in Saudi Arabia! (U9)
- 17 The new drug appears to have had remarkable effects. (U10)
- 18 He has been alleged that he took money in return for political favours. (U10)
- 19 I'm about to be getting really angry! (U11)
- 20

I was going to do something today, but I haven't finished doing nothing from yesterday. (U11)



## Prepositions

### 4 Prepositions in set phrases

- 1 Write *in*, *at*, *by*, *with*, or *out of* above the correct list of phrases.

1 _____ sight chance design	2 _____ time luck hindsight	3 _____ reach place turn
4 _____ common tears advance	5 _____ ease a guess a disadvantage	

- 2 Complete the sentences with the set phrases from exercise 1.
  - 1 With \_\_\_\_\_, I realize that I spoke out of \_\_\_\_\_ – it wasn't appropriate for me to make the announcement.
  - 2 You don't really believe that you were given this doomed project just by \_\_\_\_\_, do you? I think it was all by \_\_\_\_\_, to make you look bad.
  - 3 I'm sorry, I need to tidy up before I can relax. I just don't feel at \_\_\_\_\_ when everything is out of \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 4 If you don't do enough research in \_\_\_\_\_, you'll be at \_\_\_\_\_ compared to the other interviewees.
  - 5 Don't worry – with \_\_\_\_\_ you'll find that the diet gets much easier. At a \_\_\_\_\_, it'll take you a month to lose a couple of kilos.
  - 6 Poor old Martha was in \_\_\_\_\_ after her date. She had such high hopes, but apparently they had absolutely nothing in \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 7 I don't know much about Damien. I only know him by \_\_\_\_\_, so with \_\_\_\_\_, I will recognize him when he arrives.
  - 8 Always keep tablets and medicine out of \_\_\_\_\_ of young children, otherwise they'll try to get at them.


# Vocabulary

## 5 Expressions with light, weather, and food

- 1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in the box.

flood	slave	spark	tighten	dawn
keep	foggy	bite	overshadow	boom

- I volunteered to be project leader on this, but I may have \_\_\_\_\_ off more than I can chew.
- Clare said she hadn't the \_\_\_\_\_ idea how much it would all cost.
- Glenn's success in his first major film role was \_\_\_\_\_ by the death of his father that year.
- It was a TV programme about family history that first \_\_\_\_\_ my interest in genealogy.
- When I heard Helen's voice on the phone and knew she was safe, the relief \_\_\_\_\_ through me.
- I'd been trying to get into the wrong car! It finally \_\_\_\_\_ on me when I saw a child seat in the back!
- It's been a tough couple of years, but business is finally \_\_\_\_\_ again now.
- I hope you're all hungry! I've been \_\_\_\_\_ away in the kitchen all afternoon.
- The government wants to reduce its spending, but we've \_\_\_\_\_ our belts so much already, there's nothing left to cut.
- We can't take on any more work. We're only just \_\_\_\_\_ our heads above water now.

- 2  Listen to the lines and reply, using the words in 1–10 with their metaphorical meaning. Then listen and check/compare.

- |            |              |
|------------|--------------|
| 1 breeze   | 6 sour       |
| 2 snow     | 7 hot        |
| 3 cloud    | 8 shady      |
| 4 flash    | 9 food       |
| 5 grilling | 10 whirlwind |

## 6 Idioms with *like*

Choose the correct way to complete the idiomatic expressions.

- We did a lot of preparation for the webinar, and it all went like *a clock / clockwork*.
- I knew straightaway that Jason wasn't telling the truth. I can read him like a *book / story*.
- Once a rumour starts in this office, it spreads like *wildfire / butter*.
- That jacket fits you like a *glove / slipper*. You really should buy it.
- Poor Alan! He was so nervous before the interview he was shaking like a *fish / leaf*.
- You've forgotten her house number? Honestly, you've got a memory like *water / a sieve*.
- Cook lots of spaghetti if Tim is coming. He eats like a *dog / horse*.
- That bed is so comfortable! I went out like a *light / candle* last night, and slept like a *log / rock*.
- I so enjoyed meeting Karen! We got on like *peas in a pod / a house on fire*.
- These T-shirts are very popular. They're selling like *hot cakes / warm bread*!
- Everyone will be wearing suits, so if you don't, you'll stick out like a *bent nail / sore thumb*.
- Thanks for that tip on retrieving lost documents. It worked like a *charm / trick*.

## 7 Idioms with *as ... as*

Complete the sentences with the words in the box.


sheet	bone	mud	feather	pancake
gold	mustard	old boots	clockwork	houses

- You'll be fine walking alone around here at night. It's as safe as \_\_\_\_\_.
- Are you feeling OK? You've gone as white as a \_\_\_\_\_!
- It hasn't rained for weeks and the ground is as dry as a \_\_\_\_\_.
- Bob is dying to start work on this project – he's as keen as \_\_\_\_\_.
- This is a great area for cycling around – it's as flat as a \_\_\_\_\_.
- I've enjoyed looking after little Maddie for you – she's been as good as \_\_\_\_\_.
- The chips are wonderful, but this steak is as tough as \_\_\_\_\_.
- It rains every afternoon in the Amazon – it's as regular as \_\_\_\_\_.
- I can't understand this instruction manual. It's as clear as \_\_\_\_\_.
- The battery in this phone is small, and it means it's as light as a \_\_\_\_\_.

# Reading

## 8 The midlife crisis

- 1 What do you think? Answer the questions.
  - 1 When was the term 'midlife crisis' first used?  
a 1940s                      b 1950s                      c 1960s
  - 2 What is the typical age for a midlife crisis?  
a 35                              b 45                              c 55
  - 3 Which is a classic sign of a midlife crisis nowadays?  
a wanting a tattoo      b getting a pet  
c going clubbing

 Read and listen to the text and check your answers.

- 2 Are the sentences true (✓) or false (X) according to the text? Correct the false ones.
  - 1 Many men start wearing their old clothes in their 40s.
  - 2 Before the 1960s, adults generally settled into their roles as proper 'grown-ups'.
  - 3 Women and men tend to put equal effort into appearing younger.
  - 4 It's become more common to look for a completely new occupation earlier in life.
  - 5 It's not unusual for people to take a long period off work in their 30s.
  - 6 People often make jokes about men who don't take care of themselves in later life.
  - 7 People's identities are always changing.
  - 8 Increasing numbers of adults seize opportunities to enjoy life to the full, without worrying about the health consequences.
- 3 Match the words and phrases in A and B (all from the text) to make synonyms.

A	B
1 to snigger at	a to trigger
2 an attraction to	b to criticize
3 common	c disparaging
4 conventional	d to bid farewell to
5 a major transformation	e to make fun of
6 to leave	f to shift
7 to start	g to accomplish
8 to attain	h abundant
9 to castigate	i a radical overhaul
10 insulting	j staid
11 to change	k a predilection for

# Crisis?

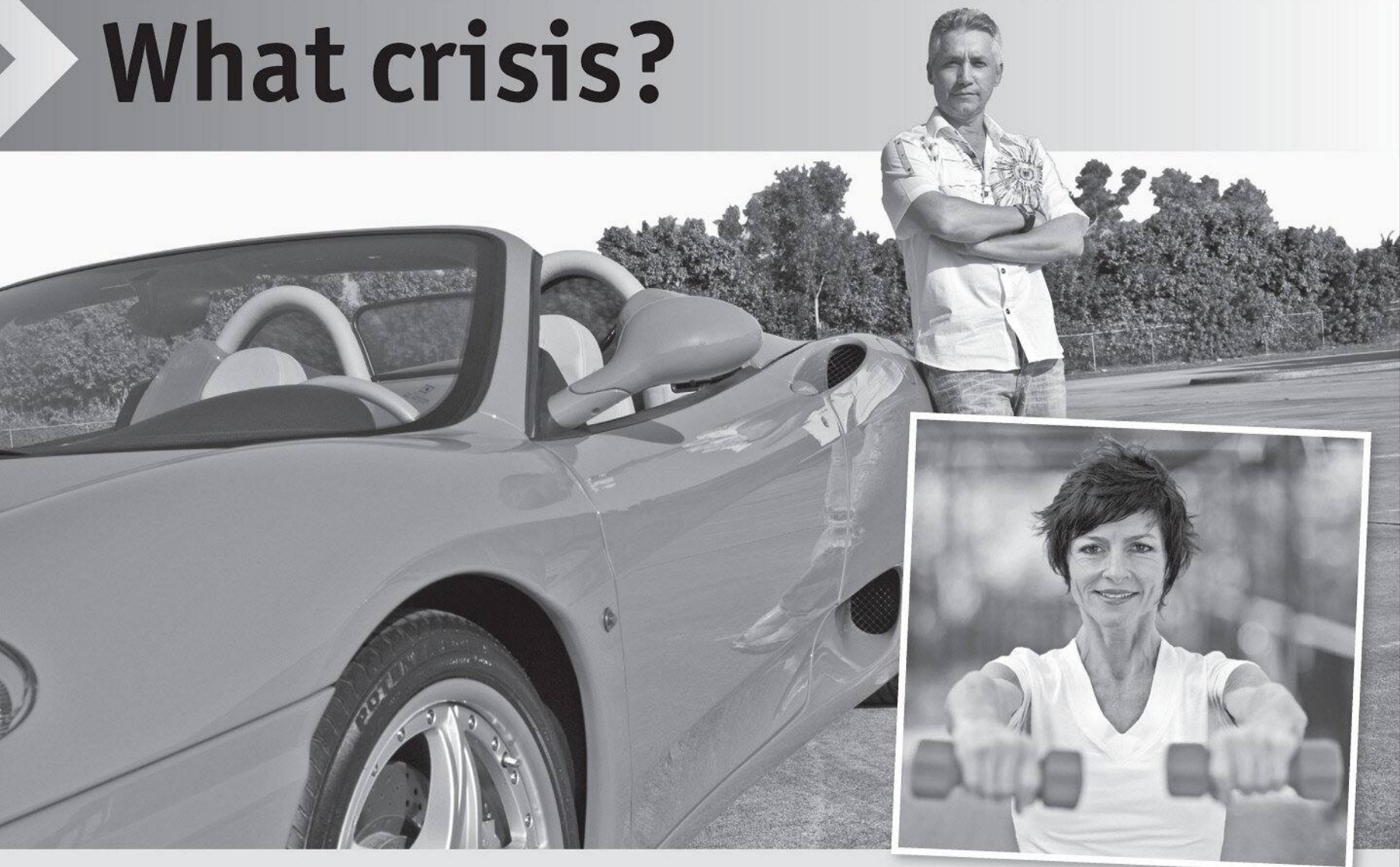
Jackie Stone reports on that most difficult time of life.

**T**he syndrome has been common for decades; a man reaches his mid- to late 40s, and suddenly appears to have rediscovered the clothes he was wearing in his 20s (albeit in a larger size). The leather trousers are politely ignored by his friends, but there are sniggers when the bright red or yellow sports car (or worse, a motorbike) makes its appearance, and raised eyebrows when he starts turning up at parties with girlfriends young enough to be his daughter. And then the phrase is whispered among those watching, with a knowing nudge and a wink ... 'Midlife crisis!'

The term 'midlife crisis' was first coined in the 1960s, when remaining a conventionally staid adult lost its attraction for some, and the temptation to join in with the radical experimentations of the youth of the time became too strong to resist. It was thought to occur mostly with men between the ages of 40 and 60, and no matter how much of a cliché the syndrome became, there has always seemed to be an abundant supply of individuals who follow its predictable pattern, apparently unable to see that they have become a figure of fun.

According to recent studies, however, things have changed, and the midlife crisis itself has undergone a major transformation in recent years. For a start, a desperate attempt to hang on to a more youthful appearance clearly passes the equal opportunities test these days, with so many women going under the cosmetic surgeon's knife that the men's predilection for a bit of hair dye and moisturizer seems tame in comparison. And it all begins ever younger. One of the triggers for a major identity crisis appears to have been the accomplishment of long held career goals, leading to an empty sense of '... so what now'? With younger people attaining senior management positions much sooner (the average age of CEOs has fallen from 59 to 48 in the last generation), these career plateaus can come much earlier in life. Even for those who aren't as ambitious, severe work pressure often leads to a need to re-evaluate career options in one's 30s, bringing on a crossroads moment well before the big four-oh is reached. This applies to women too these days, and whether career-oriented or not, another factor for mothers is the bewildering freedom which hits them when the children have left home.

# What crisis?



While 45 is still the most common tipping point, the typical signs of a midlife crisis appear to have shifted to reflect more recent trends. Gone is the tendency to join a golf club or go nightclubbing. Recent surveys suggest that men and women the wrong side of 40 are most likely to reveal their angst about bidding farewell to their younger selves by:

- looking up old boyfriends or girlfriends on Facebook
- considering a tattoo
- running a half marathon
- deciding it's time to go to music festivals again
- taking a sabbatical
- removing all details of age from their online presence
- using younger photos of themselves as online avatars.




Many of the people who responded to surveys on this topic complained about the term 'midlife crisis' itself, however, and the disparaging way it is used. Two-thirds of Britons thought it was an insulting stereotype, and men complained that while they are castigated for 'letting themselves go' as they get older, any attempt to look after their appearance after the age of 40 was often met with ridicule and the accusation of a midlife crisis.

Perhaps we need to remember that we get the word 'crisis' from the Greek *krisis*, meaning 'turning point'. It's not difficult to see, as the psychologist Carl Jung explained in some detail, that while our personalities may alter somewhat throughout life, there should come a time when the ego identity we've grown up with undergoes a radical overhaul in preparation for the second half of life. And it's not as if exploring new activities and deciding to get fitter is something to be criticized. As a spokesman for Jeep, one of the companies who carried out one of the surveys, said, 'The traditional image of a midlife crisis is dead and buried. Nowadays it's more about living for the moment and making the most of things and leading an active and healthy lifestyle.'

## Pronunciation

### 9 Reading aloud: word linking and intrusive sounds

- 1 Read the beginning of the script of a documentary on scientific revolutions. You are going to narrate the documentary. Go through the script carefully and mark all the examples of word linking and intrusive sounds. The first line has been done for you.
- 2 Practise reading the script aloud, making sure you include all the linking to give your narration a natural flow. You don't need to read it quickly – linking is more important than speed in making speech sound natural.
- 3  Listen and compare, and practise reading the script aloud again.

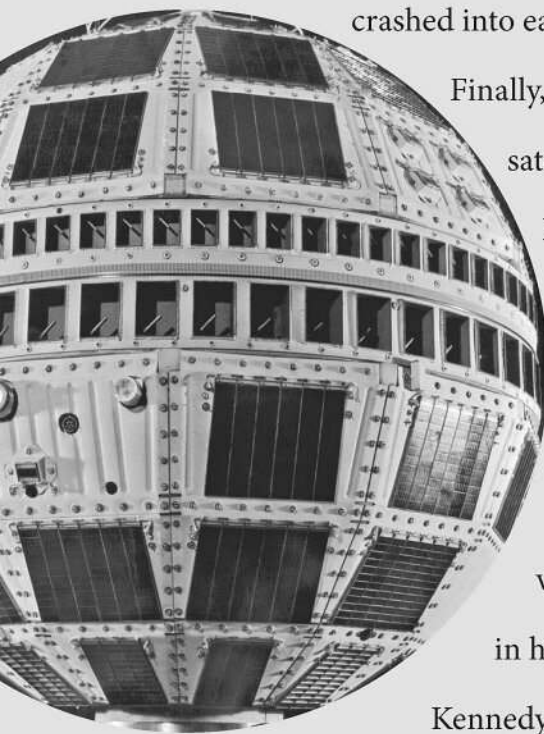
## Technology in the 1960s

We think of our current era /r/ as the /j/ apex of outstanding advances in science, so it may come as a surprise that the decade in which the most revolutionary and far-reaching advances occurred was over fifty years ago – the 1960s.

Between 1960 and 1970, astronomers understood that the universe had a beginning, when it exploded in the Big Bang, so it was also true it could end one day. In the same decade, geologists found evidence for the theory of continental drift, which explained how the Earth's landmasses were shaped as they moved around and crashed into each other.




Finally, it was in 1962 that a communications satellite was first launched into space.

Before Telstar, images for TV had to be sent by plane across the globe before viewers could see them. The arrival of satellite communication changed everything. By 1963, viewers around the world could watch in horror the assassination of President Kennedy, almost as it happened, and the era of the global village had arrived.



## Listening

### 10 *The Road Not Taken*, by Robert Frost

- 1 Read about the American poet Robert Frost. What do you think his poem *The Road Not Taken* is about?
- 2  Read and listen to the poem and check your ideas.
- 3 Answer the questions.
  - 1 Is the tone of the poem ... ?
    - a boastful
    - b thoughtful
    - c complaining
  - 2 The poem is about the writer ... .
    - a always making bad decisions in life
    - b finding his choice of path obvious
    - c wondering which path is best to take
  - 3 Which is the rhyme scheme of the poem?
    - a ABABA
    - b ABAAB
    - c ABBAB
- 4  Listen to **Part One** of a talk about the poem and check your answers. Which rhyme in the poem is slightly irregular?
- 4  Listen to **Part Two** of the talk and answer the questions.
  - 1 What adjective did Frost use to describe this poem?
  - 2 What is the simplistic message that many people wrongly take from the poem?
  - 3 What do people often fantasize about when they look back at their lives?
  - 4 What did Frost's friend, Edward Thomas, do after receiving the poem?

# Robert Frost

1874–1963, San Francisco, CA

By the 1920s, Robert Frost was the most celebrated poet in America, winning many awards, including four Pulitzer prizes in his lifetime. Although he used traditional rhyme and meter, his work was considered very modern in that he used simple language as it is actually spoken. The themes of his poetry are everyday and universal, and sometimes dark, with a knowing touch of irony or ambiguity. His most famous poem is *The Road Not Taken*, published in 1916.



## The Road Not Taken

Two roads diverged in a yellow wood,  
And sorry I could not travel both  
And be one traveler, long I stood  
And looked down one as far as I could  
To where it bent in the undergrowth;

Then took the other, as just as fair,  
And having perhaps the better claim,  
Because it was grassy and wanted wear;  
Though as for that the passing there  
Had worn them really about the same,

And both that morning equally lay  
In leaves no step had trodden black.  
Oh, I kept the first for another day!  
Yet knowing how way leads on to way,  
I doubted if I should ever come back.

I shall be telling this with a sigh  
Somewhere ages and ages hence:  
Two roads diverged in a wood, and I—  
I took the one less traveled by,  
And that has made all the difference.

# Tapescripts

## UNIT 1

### 6, exercises 1 and 2

#### Words of wisdom

##### 1 Elaine

This is something my father said to me the night before I got married and I always keep coming back to it. Dad said, 'You know there are only three things in life of real importance – there's love, there's home, and there's work ... and as long as two out of the three are OK you can deal with the third one. But lately I've been thinking that love and home are so intertwined it's a bit tricky, isn't it?'

##### 2 Sue

Well, something my mum used to say a lot is when I was younger – it's a little proverb I think and it's ... er ... 'Love many, trust a few, always paddle your own canoe.' And that's something I've remembered all my life and I suppose in a way I stick to it without really realizing that I am.

##### 3 Simon

Well, I think the words of wisdom I remember most are from my mother who was a hippy in the 1970s – she said 'always follow your heart, especially with freedom and love.' She did that and in fact she and my dad are still a great couple. I believe it – I've always done the same in love and in my work.

##### 4 Lizzie

Actually this is something my ex-husband always said – he was quite a nice guy really ... er ... whenever we had a friend who irritated or annoyed us in some way, ... er ... someone who maybe was mean or who never listened and was always full of themselves and their own goings-on etcetera – he, my ex, always said that before you cast people off and out of your lives you should allow them three faults. That way you get to keep most of your friends. Erm – I don't know what that says about the relationship I had with him – obviously there were a lot more than three faults on both sides!

##### 5 Justin

This is an everyday piece of advice from me to me – something I've learnt from bitter experience – never go shopping in the supermarket if you're hungry! Always go shopping on a full stomach. It's absolutely fatal if you don't – you spend a fortune, get fat, and end up with loads of food in your fridge and cupboards that goes past its sell-by date.

##### 6 Fiona

I remember my grandmother saying to me – I can't remember exactly what it was about, I was depressed about something, I was just a kid, and she said to me, 'This too will pass.' I dunno something had happened at school, whatever,

and she was just saying 'don't worry too much about it, it'll be over soon, it'll be a memory and this too will pass.' And I thought that was a really good way of looking at things – you know bad things – they do pass, but I think it's also true of good things. It's important to make the most of good things 'cos they too will pass. It's a good piece of wisdom, don't you think?

##### 7 Chris

Well, these are not really words of wisdom, they're letters of wisdom, I suppose. The letters are WP, which stand for ... er ... willpower, which is something my grandmother repeats at regular intervals, mainly, it has to be said, to my grandfather. Basically, she means that with willpower you can achieve pretty much anything, so if at first you don't succeed, keep persisting and eventually you'll get there. WP, WP!

##### 8 Martyn

It comes from an American actor friend of mine. He said this to me, I guess about 15 years ago, he just said 'Marty, dust it off!' And 'dust it off' essentially just means 'don't dilly-dally, just DO it'.

### 4, exercise 3

#### Part Two

She looked at her watch and she said 'This train is stopping her for another 27 minutes. Have you ever read the works of Anthony Trollope?' And I'm thinking, wait a minute this is really strange, but 'Yes, I like Trollope a lot.' 'Good,' she said. 'Would you be willing to discuss with me *The Eustace Diamonds*, particularly the character of Lady Glencora?' I'm thinking 'this is not happening,' but I do my best, struggling. I mean, I must have read *The Eustace Diamonds* twenty years before. I could just about remember odds and ends, so I struggle through a conversation with her and then the guard waved his green flag and blew a whistle and she said 'Quick, quick, go back otherwise you'll miss your train.' So I ... but I said, 'You're beautiful. I love you. I want to live with you for the rest of my life.' And she said, 'Don't be so silly! Get in the train. Give me your business card.' So I didn't have one, but George had one so I scribbled my name as the train was moving. And the last vision I have of her was her scrabbling on her hands and knees to pick up my card while we went round the corner and I went back into the compartment and I said, 'George, I've just had the most really strange experience ...' So we then went travelling all over Siberia for the next couple of months and I arrived back in Hong Kong and there was a letter ...

### 4, exercise 4

#### Part Three

... there was a letter, and she said: 'Dear Mister Winchester, I just want you to know that meeting you that day was just one of the most extraordinary events of my life. I ... am married to a cadre in the Chinese Communist Party and we were ... he committed some infraction and we were sent to this ghastly little town ... It was called Kwi Tun. Nothing happens here. It's 30 miles away from the road and from the railway line. There's no one here that speaks English. I'm the only person, but I'm desperate not to lose my language, so the international train goes through every Tuesday and Thursday and I cycle all the way across the desert, down to the train station, wait for it to come in, knock on every compartment to see if there's anyone there that speaks English. Occasionally there's some sort of migrant worker ... but one day I meet this man who not only can speak English, but *is* English and, my passion is Trollope. He knew all about Trollope. I was able to speak for 25 minutes about Trollope and it was like ... you were like an angel from heaven. It was wonderful.'

Anyway, we're the very best of friends. We have been for years.

## UNIT 2

### 4, exercise 2

#### Literature in the desert

##### Part One

Yes, that was a wonderful story. I was ... there was a new railway line constructed across far western China, from a place called Urunchi, through a pass called the Zungarian Gate ... in to what is now Kazakhstan ... and I thought it would be nifty to ride on one of the first trains, of course it's an extremely remote part of the world. So I go with a friend of mine called George Robertson, and the two of us go out from Urunchi, crossing the desert and now we're about 150 miles west of Urunchi and it's just sand and dunes and nothing. And then suddenly the train stops and I look out and there's this 'halt'. I mean, it's not a station, there's no town, there's just a sort of watering tower, and so I said to the conductor 'Why have we stopped?' and he said 'Oh, we're taking on water' or something like that and we'll be stopped for half an hour. So I get out and stretch my legs in the blazing sun and sand dunes, camels ... until I go and talk to the engine driver and while I'm doing so, I hear a voice from the si ... behind me, saying in pretty impeccable English: 'Excuse me, do you speak English?' And I turn round and there is this vision of loveliness, this beautiful Chinese woman and I said 'Yes, I do actually,' and she said 'Good!' in a very sort of matter-of-fact slightly unsmiling way.

## UNIT 3

### 7, exercise 2

#### A family business

I = Interviewer    V = Vijay    B = Bhikhu

#### Part One

- I So, Vijay, you started your business with the equivalent of a corner shop except it was a pharmacy ...
- V Yes, it was a pharmacy, indeed, yes.
- I Now Bhikhu, what was it in you two that made you go from that one corner shop to what we have now?
- B Er ... well, what I did ... I mean, I qualified as an architect, worked in private practices and so on, and ultimately decided it was not for me. So, thereafter I went into business, which was a couple of corner shops, but then, after a couple of years, I left it and I came across to where my brother Vijay was and joined him, and by then he had started his pharmacy business, made a success of it and by the time I joined him I think he had about three or four, quite a few shops and we decided to go in together ...
- I Two brothers working in the same business could be a recipe for disaster – you know power struggles and all the rest of it, but in your cases, what is it, what do you each bring that the other perhaps lacks?
- V Bhikhu is a trained architect, and, you know, Bhikhu has a tremendously disciplined and very high IQ mind ... so I was building up a very, very successful enterprise – that's something I do have in me, the vision, the go, even if I say so myself, but I do lack the discipline to look after it ... and hence Bhikhu's strength really enhances my weakness tremendously, so the deal was, I make the wealth – brother, you look after it. Today, twenty or twenty-two, twenty-three years on, that stays.
- B Yeah, so it works very well, I think basically we complement each other, and where we're different from other people perhaps ... er ... there isn't a lot of sibling rivalry ... a lot of it is for the greater good of the family. A lot of Asian families are like that. They look after the family as a whole and I think that comes across in our relationship as well, really. And that is important.
- I On the subject of family you ... you mentioned earlier how much of a role your mother had in your early life, especially after your father died. What ... Is she with you now?
- V Indeed she is. And do you know, she is a very strong person. She lives with me ... she's a very strong personality. I mean a truly great lady. She sacrificed her entire life. You know she just worked twelve hours a day, seven days a week for so many years until we were grown up enough to leave the nest, as it were.

### 7, exercises 3 and 4

#### Part Two

- I You've just been nominated ... or named as joint entrepreneurs of the year. What was it for, Vijay?
- V Well, coming from where we did ... to actually build a successful business and the other thing is to actually provide employment – we provide employment for 600 people directly.
- I Do you think success has spoiled the Patels?

- V Speaking for myself and my brother, I don't think it has. We are not the sort of helicopter or yacht people in any sense. I can truly say that we do not see ourselves any different to how we saw ourselves when we were younger. In fact we've got the same friends as we had when we were children, same college and university friends, we still keep in touch with them and I would like to think that we're approachable, so ... I would say it hasn't really spoilt or changed us. Yeah? I mean, clearly, in terms of luxuries in life one tends to sort of indulge oneself a little bit, but not extraordinarily, I hope. Isn't that right, Bhikhu?
- B No way extravagantly, because if I could go on the train somewhere rather than the car, then I would. Er ... that sums up our, you know, approach to life. We really ... I would rather do some philanthropic work than waste money.
- I One final question. Young people starting out ... what sort of advice would you give them?
- V Shall I go first?
- B Yeah, do.
- V Live your dreams. If you have an ambition, go for it. Do not let little, small distractions or calamities stop you. Chase your dreams and go for it, that's exactly what I have done. That's where I would like to be a role model, for anybody who wants to be somebody tomorrow ... er ... to see what we have done, and if I can touch one life, then my job in this world is done.
- I What about you, Bhikhu?
- B Well, what I would say is ... with dreams one needs a ... dose of reality, a lot of hard work, and as Vijay says, not to be set back by any temporary kind of difficulties.

## UNIT 4

### 7, exercises 1 and 2

#### Euphemisms – in an estate agent's

EA = Estate agent    Mrs B = Mrs Brown

Mr B = Mr Brown

- EA Mr and Mrs Brown?
- Mrs B That's right.
- EA Gary Connelly from Sellit and Runn. How do you do?
- Mr and Mrs B Hello.
- EA I understand you're interested in Number 21 Churchill Road.
- Mr B Yes, that's right.
- EA Here are the details of the property ... Churchill Road is in a lively, popular area of town.
- Mrs B Are there any shops nearby?
- EA Yes, the local shops are within walking distance. And I believe there's a regular bus service into the city centre.
- Mrs B Uh huh.
- Mr B Is there a drive or garage?
- EA Well, the house benefits from ample parking space, erm, directly in front of the house.
- Mrs B Oh, so no front garden?
- EA Heh, heh, not as such, no.
- Mrs B What decorative condition is the house in?
- EA It's ideal for the DIY enthusiast. A lick of paint certainly wouldn't go amiss.
- Mr B Is there any building work that needs doing?

- EA No. I think just the roof is in need of some attention. Here's a photo of the living room ... As you can see, it's been tastefully modernized. It was the previous owner I believe who got rid of the draughty old fireplace. And here's the kitchen ... Full of character, as you can see.
- Mrs B The units look really old.
- EA A little on the old side perhaps. Ideal for modernizing.
- Mr B And it's rather small.
- EA Well, yes, it's not exactly enormous, but then I like to have everything within easy reach of the cooker or the sink, don't you? (doubtfully) Mmm. And is this the dining room?
- EA Yes. It's a bit on the small side, but very cosy.
- Mr B I don't think you could get a very large dining table in there.
- Mrs B And is it dark?
- EA It isn't the brightest room in the house, certainly, but there's a nice view from the window, looking out over the rear garden ... I think we have a photo of the garden ... Yes, here. As you can see, the garden is very mature and well-established.
- Mrs B Those roses need pruning.
- Mrs B How much did you say the house was on for?
- EA £300,000. Not exactly cheap, I grant you, but in view of the popularity of the area, a very reasonable price, I'm sure you agree.

## UNIT 5

### 5, exercises 1 and 4

#### Martine and Jaap – A marriage of two nationalities

M = Martine    J = Jaap

- J Well, it was nearly 25 years ago now ...
- M It was twenty-two.
- J Oh, yes, 22. And I was on holiday in Provence. A walking holiday. I'm from Holland – it's so flat – so the mountains here, here in Provence were irresistible, especially Mont Ventoux just here. It has wonderful walking trails.
- M Yes, you see, I've lived in this village all my life. I was born here. Every day I've woken to the sight of the mountain rising up in front of the village. Every day it's the same, but a little bit different. It's so beautiful. The way the snowline ebbs in and flows in the winter, or how the flowers cover the mountainside in spring. It's, it's entrancing.
- J So I was on holiday with a friend of mine, Remi, and we'd walked to the summit of Mont Ventoux. It's a long climb, nearly five hours. We could see a village below us, a beautiful medieval perched village cascading down the hillside. It took us hours to reach it ... and by the time we did we were exhausted and very thirsty. So, the first house we came to I knocked on the door to ask for a glass of water, and ...
- M Oh, I remember ...
- J ... and the most beautiful girl opened the door!
- M Oh, Jaap!
- J And I fell in love. On the spot. That was it! My friend returned to Holland on his own.
- M It's true! Poor Remi.
- J But lucky me.
- M It was so unexpected. See, I am an artist, a potter, so my friends always believed I would

marry a creative man, another artist or a poet. And in a way I have. You see Jaap was a physics teacher when I met him. But I have taught him how to work with the potter's wheel, to throw the clay, and work with the kiln. He learned so quickly and became an expert – perhaps his science background helped. Friends say my pottery improved the very day I met Jaap, and now we've worked together for over twenty years. He throws the pieces and I hand paint them.

- J** The studio where we work is attached to the house, and we have a small shop next to that. Whether we're working or not, we always have the view of Mont Ventoux to inspire us. We never grow bored of that, or each other.

## UNIT 6

### 5, exercises 1, 2, and 3

**An interview with Pearl McGuigan – Land Girl**

**I = Interviewer P = Pearl**

- I** Pearl, you were in the Women's Land Army for several years from 1942. Can you tell us why and how you volunteered in the first place?
- P** Well, I was sixteen and a half and I wasn't very happy in my hometown of Liverpool. I wanted to get away and to do my bit for the war effort. So I went on a WLA recruitment day. It was marvellous, so enthusiastic, and I was desperate to join. I had been a sickly child and I didn't think I would be accepted, but my doctor thought it would be good for me! I received a hat, a coat, a jumper, two shirts, one overall and a pair of rubber boots, and that was that.
- I** Wow! And where were you posted, Pearl? How did you feel when you went away?
- P** I was sent to a hostel far away in Leominster, Hertfordshire, with about 30 other girls. But it was the first time I'd been away from home and I cried for at least a week. The hostel was in the middle of nowhere and the sight of all the empty green land around me made me feel queasy. But the other girls were nice and I started to make friends. There were 100 of us in the hostel – we had bunk beds and one chest of drawers between four girls, but nobody had much to put in a drawer, anyway.
- I** I suppose not. How did you get on after that? I assume you got used to it.
- P** Oh yes, but it was a shock to the system. At the end of each day we were exhausted, and we ached in places we never knew we had muscles. All that fresh air and hard labour made you ravenous – we were forever thinking of food, and there never seemed sufficient. But we did get used to it – we were so fit after a while ... And all us girls got on well together and helped each other. You know, I don't remember one argument.
- I** Really? That's amazing! What was the work like? What sort of things did you do?
- P** Well, it depended. Some farmers thought you were there just to do the horrible, dirty jobs. I remember being sent to one place with another girl. There was a huge field covered with weeds and thistles almost as tall as ourselves, and we were told to clear it. We had no tools, no gloves, and you can imagine what our hands looked like at the end of each day. We worked in all weather with no shelter, no place to eat, and not even a cup of tea. One day we decided we'd had enough and refused point blank to go.

After that we were treated better. Some places were nicer, though, and the farmer's wife would make a cake and bring it out to us. That was always a good day!

- I** I bet it was! Was it all like that? Just hard work?
- P** Well, the work was hard. Harvest time was the trickiest, and the most dangerous. You had to be really careful with all the big machinery, especially when you were already dog-tired. But there were fun times, too. We would sometimes go into town on the back of a lorry to a tea dance or to the cinema. Now and then, American GIs were billeted at the army base nearby and that always caused excitement. The GIs were so handsome and so generous! The girls were always falling in love and one of my best friends, Edie, married her American soldier – Buck, his name was – and went to Florida after the war.
- I** That's quite a change of pace – going to Florida. Do you regret your time in the WLA at all, Pearl?
- P** Oh no! It was life-changing for all of us, I think. My time in the WLA was a huge boost to my self-esteem and I actually joined the RAF at the close of the war in 1945. Some girls stayed on in farming the countryside and got married. Others got jobs elsewhere. And a lot of us kept in touch for the rest of our lives. I still write to Edie in Florida. We're 89 now – and still fit!

## UNIT 7

### 9, exercises 2 and 3

**Comedy club**

**M = Mike, stand-up comedian H = Hecklers**

**A = Audience member**

- M** Anyway, there are these two friends out in the woods, hunting ...
- H** Heard it! That joke's older than I am!
- M** Ah, I bet you think I'm gonna do the one about making sure he's dead, don't you?
- H** Yeah!
- M** Ah, well no, these guys are definitely alive, but both of their guns have jammed, and there's this massive, very hungry grizzly bear, running towards them through the trees. One of the guys drops his gun and backpack and starts to run away. The other guy runs after him and shouts, 'Why are you running? It's pointless. Everyone knows humans can't run faster than a bear!' His mate carries on running and shouts, 'I don't need to run faster than the bear. I only need to run faster than you!'
- Ah... It's nice when people laugh. I never used to get that in my previous jobs. I worked as a hotel receptionist once, you know, but I dunno ... I always had reservations.
- Then I got a job in a bank, but ... I lost interest. So, anyway, I trained as a history teacher, but ... there was no future in it.
- I retrained as an electrician, but ... the pay was shocking.
- I did quite well after that selling computer parts, but somehow ... I lost my drive.
- I had a go at being a tailor, but ... it didn't suit me.
- Oh, come on. I didn't even say that the work was sew-sew.
- Oh alright, I'd better stop those there. You look like you have a good job, sir. Are you in finance?

**A** No, I'm in oil.

**M** You're in oil! What are you, a sardine? I thought you were sitting a bit close to that person next to you!

Some of my friends have amazing jobs. My mate Carl, he's dead clever – he's a physics professor – a proper one, you know, nuclear physics and stuff. I never know what he's on about, but then, even he says, you can't trust atoms. Apparently they make up everything ... Mmm, maybe a bit highbrow, that one ...

Anyway, Carl was doing this big lecture tour last year, over a hundred universities he went to, all round Europe. He had a chauffeur driving him round, a smart bloke, bit of a know-all – used to drive taxis in London, you know what I mean, ... and as they were on their way to the last lecture, the chauffeur says to Carl, 'You know, I've heard your lecture so many times, I think I could give it myself.'

'That's interesting,' says Carl. 'Let's swap clothes and try it as an experiment.' So the chauffeur puts on Carl's gown and walks into the lecture theatre. Carl puts on the chauffeur's uniform and cap, and sits at the back to see how it goes. The chauffeur gives the lecture perfectly – them London cabbies are good at memorizing stuff. But when he's finished, one of the students in the audience asks a really difficult question. The chauffeur thinks for a moment, and then says, 'Ah, that's actually a really easy question to answer. In fact, it's so easy, I'm going to let my chauffeur answer it.' I do like clever people with a sense of humour. That Sherlock Holmes bloke – he's great, isn't he? I heard him and Dr Watson were on a camping trip. After a nice campfire meal, they lay down for the night, and went to sleep. In the middle of the night, Sherlock wakes up. He nudges Watson, and says, 'Watson, look up and tell me what you see, and what you can deduce from it.'

Watson thinks for a while, and replies, 'I see thousands of stars against a cloudy background. Astronomically, that tells me that we're looking out into the outer reaches of the Milky Way, our nearest galaxy. Horologically, I deduce that the time is approximately a quarter past three. Meteorologically, I suspect that we will have a beautiful day tomorrow. Why, what does it tell you, Sherlock?' Sherlock is silent for a minute, and then says, 'You idiot, Watson. Someone's stolen our tent.'

## UNIT 8

### 7, exercises 2 and 3

**Toy stories**

**I = Interviewer**

**M = Professor Joanne Malone**

- I** Good evening, and welcome to *Society At Large*. As regular listeners will know, we have been looking at issues of gender in school and the workplace. Today we are looking a little earlier than that – at the playroom, and toys in particular. Toys have long been a hot topic in the child-raising debate, with various factions of parents and child experts fiercely arguing about the merits and demerits of dolls versus guns and so on. But it seems we have another voice in the toy debate – that of the children themselves.
- Today we have with us in the studio someone who can tell us more about it, Professor Joanne

Malone of the *Parents for Change* forum. Good evening, Professor Malone, and welcome.

**M** Good evening.

**I** Professor Malone, you are a research scientist and also a parent. What is the Parents for Change forum that you are involved with?

**M** Well, it's a website where people can discuss their various parenting concerns and when appropriate we can petition for change. It's a fact that there's power in numbers, and with the Internet we can reach more people more quickly than ever before. And from any age ... In fact, I've recently been looking at what the children themselves have been saying about toys.

**I** So, tell us what have you learned?

**M** Well, it's a fascinating area. After so long listening to adults accusing each other of ridiculously feminist or scarily traditional attitudes to childraising, who better to discuss toys than the recipients of those toys themselves? It seems that the next generation is much more savvy than we are in assessing what there is on offer for them to play with.

**I** Can you give us some examples of this?

**M** Certainly. There are some lovely examples to quote from the past few years. Firstly, have you seen the Internet video from the States of a four-year-old girl called Riley Barry? It went viral and was watched by hundreds of thousands of viewers. There she is in a huge toyshop in front of rows and rows of pink boxes of dolls, and she's not happy about it. 'Why do all the girls have to buy pink stuff?' she complains. 'It isn't fair for all the girls to buy princesses and all the boys to buy superheroes.'

**I** So she was complaining about pink packaging?

**M** Well, when asked about it, she said it was because the 'companies who make these want to trick the girls into buying the pink stuff instead of stuff that boys want to buy'.

**I** So she felt she was being duped?

**M** Well, yes – she could see something was going on and was trying to work out what it was. She felt pigeonholed. She also felt that boys should be able to have princesses if they wanted.

**I** Do you think her parents might have put her up to it? After all they did video her?

**M** That's always a possibility, but she's not the only small child complaining about pink and blue packaging. In the UK, seven-year-old Emma Owen wrote to the Lego™ Company to say that 'there are more Lego boy people and barely any girls'. And she also pointed out that the little boy figures 'went on adventures, worked and had jobs' whereas the little girl figures went to the beach and shopped and had no jobs. She finished up by asking Lego for more girl figures and for them to have adventures, too. The letter appeared in national newspapers and on the Internet.

**I** Is that true? Such traditional roles in Lego form? Really? In this day and age?

**M** Well, pretty much – until recently. And this is something I'm delighted about ... Lego has now brought out some new girl figures – and they're scientists! There's an astronomer, a chemist, and a paleontologist, all with their own instruments and a lab. I love it. Just the sort of thing I would have liked as a geeky child myself.

**I** Was this due to Emma's letter?

**M** Well, yes, perhaps in part. But there was also a proposal submitted to the Lego ideas website by scientist Dr Ellen Kooijman – who had to

raise more than 10,000 votes for her idea to be considered. I voted myself. I think it's great.

**I** Obviously, but does it just work the one way? Are there any examples of little boys complaining about gender stereotyping of toys?

**M** Oh, yes. There was a four-year-old boy Gavyn Boscio in the States who loved cooking and baking and wanted a Hasbro Easy-Bake Oven along with a dinosaur for Christmas. But because the toy cooker was bright pink and purple and there were only girls on the packaging, he felt he wasn't allowed one.

**I** What happened?

**M** His thirteen-year-old sister McKenna Pope started a petition on *Change.org* to have the company make a more neutral design. She felt that just marketing cooking to girls was a ridiculously old-fashioned attitude, anyway. National papers and TV channels ran the story and top chefs got involved and put their signatures to the petition. She got 45,000 signatures and was invited to the Hasbro offices along with her brother to see the new silver, black, and blue design.

**I** So, everybody's happy.

**M** Absolutely. After all, why limit your market and try to sell your toys to just half of the child population? Hamleys – you know, London's famous toy store? – well, it stopped dividing its shops into pink and blue sections for boys and girls a few years ago. Instead the toys were organized into categories and children could choose from anywhere in the store. The following year its profits rose by 70%. Coincidence? I don't think so.

**I** So the message is that children should be free to make their own choice as to what interests them.

**M** Absolutely. That's absolutely it. As toy companies – and as parents! – why should you try and dictate things one way or the other? This younger generation is already working out for themselves what's fair and not fair in the toy world, so hopefully they will do the same in the adult world when they get there. In fact, I have high hopes for this new generation!

**I** And on that lovely, positive note we will end. Many thanks for coming into the studio, Professor Malone.

## UNIT 9

### 8, exercises 2 and 3

#### Music at work

**M** = Martin      **S** = Simon      **V** = Vicky

**M** Come in.... OK, so you want to talk about the new 'no-music-at-work' rule?

**S** Yes. A lot of people are very unhappy about it, and they've asked Vicky and me to see if it can be reconsidered.

**M** Well, to be honest, I was expecting some kickback on this, but I have to tell you, I really did research this and thought about it carefully before coming to a decision.

**V** Well, we've been doing some research on it, too, so, maybe we can compare notes. Did you come across the fact that many surgeons listen to music while they work? They find it improves their focus when they're performing operations.

**M** Yes, I did actually – I was taken aback by that one!

**S** Me too! It shows you what a prejudice we have about listening to music at work, though

– that it's for slackers, and bound to reduce concentration.

**M** Mmm. Still, did you also read that a lot of the anaesthetists complain about the music, because they find it does interfere with their work, especially when things get tricky?

**V** Sure, but that's what happens when music is played for everyone to hear. No one's ever argued for that here. It's a bad idea – if people can't choose whether to listen to music, or what they listen to, they'll find the music annoying. We're talking about people listening to their own music on headphones.

**M** But I don't want an office full of people with headphones. It looks... wrong.

**V** Well, in fact people can use earphones that you can't really see.

**M** Fine, but look, I'm not actually convinced by this argument that music doesn't interfere with concentration.

**S** It is counter-intuitive, I know. But I get it now. I read something by a bloke that deals with people with attention deficit disorder, and he explained how music helps them concentrate on their work. If a job is fairly mechanical and doesn't use up all their attention, the spare attention has to go somewhere else, and so they get distracted. Music can use up your spare attention in a way that keeps you focused on what you're doing.

**V** It stops people being distracted by background noise, too, and that's a big issue in open plan offices.

**M** Well, if there's too much background noise in the office, surely we need to do something about that?

**V** Yeah, but the odd thing is, too much silence can make it hard for some people to concentrate. Some of the people I've spoken to here say they need music to fill the silence, otherwise they find the silence distracting!

**M** But look, the point I picked up on was that this may all be true for fairly mechanical, repetitive work, or work that's familiar to you, but when people are doing something new to them, or very complicated, it seems they do perform less well when listening to music. That worries me, frankly. And it would be depressing if someone told me that all the work we do here is mechanical and repetitive – we are a creative industry, after all.

**S** That's true for some workers, yeah, but not for everyone – there are plenty of very long spreadsheets to fill out with numbers. And no-one's creative for all of the time. That's why we think people should be allowed to listen to their own music if they want to, and when they want to.

**M** Mmm. I'd want some reassurance it wasn't just becoming a constant habit, though, and I don't know how you'd police that. I'm sorry, but it's just easier to have a blanket ban.

**V** But some people really will suffer from that. That's something the research shows, that if you take music away from people who are used to working with it, they do work less well.

**M** I think that's just habit, though. They'll get used to it.

**V** But it's very important to some people – we know it makes time go faster when you are doing something repetitive, and studies have shown how strong that effect is. It keeps people motivated ... it makes them like their work more. We know there's a fast turnover of staff in

this industry, and I think it really could make some people more likely to look for a job in another company.

**M** You really think so?

**S** Yes, I think there are some very strong feelings about this.

**M** OK, look, if you can impress on people that I don't want them listening to music all the time, then I'm willing to let it go on for now. But there has to be some consideration of when it's appropriate, and what kind of music. I'd ask that people choose instrumental music – it makes sense to me that that's supposed to be less distracting. I gather classical music's best, but I guess we can't expect everyone to stomach that.

**V** Oh, great. Thanks Martin. Everyone's going to really appreciate this.

**M** Well, everyone might if the volume's kept down enough.

**S** I don't think that's ever been a problem.

**M** Well, I've found it hard to get some people's attention sometimes – that's why I decided to do something about it. And there was Jeff in sales, not realizing everyone could hear him singing.

**V** His colleagues soon put a stop to that!

**M** Anyway, let's see how it goes. Off you go and do some work!

**S** OK, thanks again, Martin.

## UNIT 10

### 7, exercises 2 and 3

#### The human brain

**P** = Presenter      **R** = Dr Rosenthal

**P** You're listening to The Body Show, and, after the workings of the foot, we're moving now right to the other end of the body, to the brain. Human brains are three times larger than those of mammals with the same body size, but these huge brains still leave us in the dark concerning many aspects of how they actually function. Fortunately, our next guest, Dr Rosenthal, will shed some light on what we do know about this incredible organ. Welcome, Dr Rosenthal.

**R** Thank you.

**P** Now, we've become used to thinking of the brain as a powerful computer, with memory storage and an operating system that keeps our bodies running. Is that a good comparison, Dr Rosenthal?

**R** Er, it works as a rough analogy.

**P** And with the human brain, are we talking laptop, or supercomputer?

**R** Well, our brains weigh around one and a half kilos, which is about the same as one of the lighter laptops. That's only about 2% of our body weight, but the brain uses up at least 20% of our body's energy.

**P** Does that mean it's not very efficient?

**R** No, quite the opposite, the brain is remarkably efficient. It produces and works on the same amount of electricity you'd need to power a small light bulb. The world's most powerful supercomputer may be able to do routine computations four times faster than our brain, and store ten times as much data, but that's using enough electricity to power 10,000 homes!

**P** Oh! Quite a difference!

**R** Yes! And the human brain is capable of far more complex operations than microprocessors, so

the analogy between brains and computers breaks down quite quickly. Even a cat's brain has a thousand times more data storage than an iPad, and is a million times quicker to act on it.

**P** Incredible! So it's not surprising we need to go to sleep and switch our brains off regularly then.

**R** Well, of course our brain never switches off completely, not while we're alive, and in fact it's more active during the night than during the day.

**P** Really?!

**R** Yes, it's very active during REM sleep, when we're dreaming. We don't really understand why, but there appears to be something very important going on there.

**P** Maybe cleaning up the hard disk, if we can go back to that analogy?

**R** Yes, it probably is something like that.

**P** I sometimes feel as if my hard disk is getting full and the operating system is becoming sluggish – do our brains work less well as we get older?

**R** Well, not necessarily. The brain keeps growing in size till you're 18, but continues to develop until you're in your late 40s. After that, it is 'use it or lose it'!

**P** OK. We've heard a lot in recent years about right and left brain functions. Could you take us through that area briefly?

**R** Yes, of course. We're familiar with the brain having two hemispheres, and each side of the brain largely interacts with just one half of the body – the left side controls the right side of the body and vice versa. The left side of the brain is more responsible for language, maths and logic, whereas the right side deals with aspects of spatial awareness, face recognition, and visual imagery. It's not as clear-cut as many people think, though – for example, the right side of the brain is also important for language, helping us to recognize intonation and emphasis. Generally, both sides are needed for different aspects of all functions.

**P** Ah. The reason I'm interested is because I'm left-handed, like 10% of the population. Is there any truth in the notion that that means I use the right side of my brain more? Making me particularly creative and artistic, apparently – well, not, in my case!

**R** Actually, left-handed people tend to have more balanced brain hemispheres, while it's true that in right-handed people the left hemisphere is larger and more developed.

**P** Mmm. I see. Anyway, is there anything we should do to take care of our brains?

**R** Well, the brain is 60% fat and constantly burns glucose for fuel, so it does need us to eat regularly. And the food needs to be good quality – junk food is a no-no as far as brain function is concerned. And the same for sugary drinks, with lots of additives.

**P** So, I imagine plain water is best for the brain?

**R** That's right. And good hydration is a must for brain function – we hear of how confused people get when they start to dehydrate. Studies have shown that children who were allowed to drink water during a two-hour exam had noticeably better results.

**P** Hmm. And exercise?

**R** Yes, aerobic exercise gets more oxygen to the brain, so it's great for brain power. It can work the other way, too. In one experiment, volunteers were asked to spend fifteen minutes

a day just thinking about exercising their arms and developing their arm muscles. After twelve weeks, their arms were 13% stronger – without actually exercising them.

**P** No! That's unbelievable!

**R** Well it shows the power of mind over body! And exercise also promotes the growth of new brain cells. Scientists used to think that we were born with our full quota of brain cells, but we now know that we keep producing them throughout our lifetime, and exercise is one of the best ways to achieve this.

**P** Ah, the ability to generate new brain cells ... That's very reassuring, and a good note to end on! Thank you very much, Dr Rosenthal.

**R** You're welcome.

**P** Now, we've had a letter from ...

## UNIT 11

### 5, exercises 2, 3, and 4

#### The future from the past

**J** = Jack Willet      **E** = Eric Segal

**B** = Bob Martin      **L** = Dr Linda Grey

**J** Hello and welcome to this year's Future Worlds Society Conference and our first plenary discussion. I am Jack Willet, your chairperson. Tonight, we are taking a break from discussing technological innovations and taking a step back in time to look at some people's predictions from long ago as to how we would be living today.

We are going to use three topics as a springboard for our discussions. We have three Future Worlds Society panellists who will each introduce a topic and answer questions.

So, let me introduce first Eric Segal. Eric has a special interest in the phenomenon of the 'time capsule'; next, Dr Linda Grey, a lecturer in English Literature with a special interest in women's issues. And finally Bob Martin, an engineer, who is fascinated by the predictions of one particular engineer at the turn of the last century. Bob, let's hear from you first.

**B** Thanks, Jack. Well, I would just like to introduce the audience to the ideas of civil engineer John Elfreth Watkins who wrote an article for – interestingly – the *Ladies' Home Journal*, at the beginning of the last century, in 1900. It was quaintly called 'What may happen in the next hundred years.'

**J** And was he accurate in his predictions?

**B** Well, yes, extraordinarily so, in some cases. For example, he expected us to be taller by about 2 inches, around 5 cms – which we are – have a much longer life expectancy – which we do – but he also expected everybody to walk at least 10 miles a day – which we certainly don't!

**J** Well, I certainly don't...! What else?

**B** He foresaw intensive year-round hothousing of vegetables and fruit, fresh food travelling round the planet in massive refrigerators, and ready-made meals off-the-shelf. All of these things happen now – but he foresaw them at a time when he couldn't possibly have had any inkling of them – when farming and cooking were still lengthy and labour-intensive processes. He appeared to welcome all of this, even saying we would have strawberries the size of apples! He was a bit over-hopeful about strawberries, obviously.

- J Ha. What about other technology?
- B Watkins was even more accurate here, predicting wireless phone calls, digital photographs and live TV pictures travelling instantly across the globe – well before the first international phone call was made. He also predicted central heating and air conditioning, when people still generally had coal fires and electricity was in its infancy.
- J So Watkins' overall view of our lives was a good one?
- B Oh, yes, awesome! He envisaged car-free city centres, cheap public transport with most people living outside the city, and free university education for all. And this *was* the main aim of the 1950s and 60s with its open urban planning, and house building in the suburbs. But we've actually moved past that model for living now. People are moving back into cities as the price of transport goes up. And sadly, free universities are not around, in the USA at least.
- J Thank you, Bob. Now, Linda, you are going to introduce someone else with clear ideas on the future – with particular regard to women, is that right?
- L Yes. I specialize in women writers, and I recently came across a little-known author who wrote a similar article to Watkins but from a woman's perspective.
- J Who was she?
- L She was Josephine Daskam Bacon, born in Connecticut in 1876. She wrote adventure stories in which, unusually for the time, women took lead roles. But in 1929 she took a break from writing fiction to publish an article called 'In 1979' where she imagines women's lives fifty years into the future.
- J And what does she say?
- L Well, she said that her granddaughters would be able to 'have it all' and that technology would aid them to do so. As with most feminists at the beginning of the 20<sup>th</sup> Century, she believed that technology would continue to free women from their traditionally restricted roles in society. Many feminists fervently hoped for the invention of a 'meal-in-a-pill', and that it would provide a passport out of the kitchen for women. Already, young women who were growing up in the 1920s were used to huge technological developments and embraced them in a way that their mothers hadn't. Women of the previous generation feared technology and couldn't see the necessity of dangerous things like cars and electricity. But – for example, in the 20s, the new medium of radio was developing and young women rapidly took to it, much to the dismay of the male population who saw technology as exclusively theirs.
- J So how did Bacon see her granddaughter's lives? Happier?
- L Yes, much happier. Bacon quite rightly saw labor-saving gadgets and technology supporting a much freer society, where women could have a job, as well as children and a husband. And be free to *choose* whether she wanted both or just the job, or just the family. Which, of course, is what we have today. She also envisaged women flying to their jobs in little planes – which hasn't happened yet, unfortunately!

- J And finally, let's have a quick word from Eric about time capsules and some children's views on the future.
- E Thanks, Jack. Well, we have some wonderful ideas from children in 1968 predicting life in 2068. A primary school in Pennsylvania was closing down, so the school's time capsule was recently located and dug up. They decided to open the capsule and children's work from nearly 50 years ago came to light.
- J And what did they show?
- E Brilliantly cute and cheerful drawings of people travelling to the moon to live – or just for picnics! – and this was obviously before the first person stepped on the moon. There were also houses in big bubbles under the sea for people to live in. And the car of the future had no wheels and looked like a hovercraft travelling at speed along elevated highways. Great stuff! And as these were predictions for 2068, who's to say these children won't be correct? We already have space tourism. And I am personally looking forward to my first hover car!
- J So am I! Now ladies and gentlemen – you have heard some predictions for the future from the past. What are your thoughts on those that have happened and those that haven't yet. Will they happen? Secondly, it seems to me that these past views of our future were primarily optimistic and hopeful – two things that I feel we may have lost a bit of today? Do you agree? Let me take the first question or comment from ... you, ma'am, in the blue sweater ...

However, earlier in the poem the poet describes the two paths as looking pretty much the same and says that he can't really differentiate between them. In the last verse he says that when he is older, he will look back when telling people the story of his life, and claim that he boldly took the road less travelled. Frost is actually poking fun at the way we all mythologize our own lives, and turn what were in truth fairly arbitrary decisions into momentous turning points in life.

This may be why he admits that he will tell this tale 'with a sigh' – knowing that he is being economical with the truth. Then again, the sigh may be a genuine expression of regret. The poem is called *The Road Not Taken* not *The Road Less Travelled* – so Frost is also highlighting our tendency to look back and wonder about the other paths that we *didn't* choose in life. We hate the fact that we can't do everything we'd like to, and we're always in danger of fantasizing about how wonderful things might have been, if only ...

In fact, Frost said that the poem was a gentle teasing of his English friend, the writer Edward Thomas, with whom he went for long walks during his stay in England between 1912 and 1915. Apparently Thomas was very indecisive, and would often end the walks by regretting they hadn't taken a different path, sighing over what he might have been able to show Frost if they'd taken a better direction. Frost's view that people took this poem too seriously may be due to the fact that after receiving it in 1916, Thomas finally took the decision to enlist as a soldier in World War One. He was killed two years later at the Battle of Arras.

## UNIT 12

### 10, exercise 3

#### Part One

*The Road Not Taken* is one of Robert Frost's most famous poems. It displays some of the ambiguity and irony for which he is noted. The writer is thoughtfully mulling over a choice of paths to take through a wood. The fork in the road through the trees is obviously a metaphor for the path he is choosing to take in life. As he makes his decision about which road to take, he imagines how this decision might appear in the future.

The rhyming scheme is also regular and thoughtful. Each verse has five lines – the first, third and fourth lines rhyme, and the second and fifth lines rhyme. So the rhyming scheme is ABAAB. The rhymes are strict, except the last line – we don't usually stress the *-ence* of *difference*.

### 10, exercise 4

#### Part Two

When talking about this poem, Frost told his audiences: 'You have to be careful of that one; it's a tricky poem – very tricky.' It is indeed often misunderstood by readers looking for a simplistic message. The misinterpretation happens when people focus only on the last two lines:

*I took the one less traveled by,  
And that has made all the difference.*

These lines are often taken on their own as an inspirational quote, to mean, 'don't follow everyone else; be brave enough to take your own direction in life.'

# Answer key

## Unit 1

- 1
- 2 didn't think
  - 3 've been thinking / was thinking / 'm thinking / think, do ... think
  - 4 would think / was thinking / was going to think
  - 5 haven't seen
  - 6 'm seeing / 'm going to see
  - 7 Did ... see
  - 8 was seen / had been seen
  - 9 do ... feel / are ... feeling / have ... been feeling
  - 10 haven't felt / haven't been feeling
  - 11 is felt
  - 12 's feeling / feels / 'll be feeling
  - 13 've spent
  - 14 are you going to spend / will you spend / will you be spending
  - 15 has spent / have spent
  - 16 will have been spent
  - 17 did ... find
  - 18 found
  - 19 was found
  - 20 'll find / 're going to find / 'll be finding
  - 21 was saying
  - 22 is said / has been said
  - 23 'll say / say / 'm going to say, 've said
  - 24 to be said
- 2
- 1 Humans are unique among primates in that they **walk** upright.
  - 2 What have you been doing since I **last saw you?** / What have you been doing since I **saw you last?**
  - 3 I hated school. Perhaps I'd have liked it if I **had been** more popular.
  - 4 Why **didn't you tell** me that you don't like fruit cake?
  - 5 I was going to go to the theatre last night but then I heard that the performance **was cancelled / had been cancelled**.
  - 6 The forecast said unsettled, so take your umbrella in case **it rains**.
  - 7 His mother **put** him to bed early because he had been naughty.
  - 8 **I'm visiting / I'm going to visit** my grandmother in Scotland.
  - 9 If you're seeing Jane at the weekend, **will / could you invite** her to my party, please?
- 3
- 1 He wasn't thinking of celebrating his retirement, but he's now **decided** it's a good idea.
  - 1 (better in the passive) This bridge was built in 1897.
  - 2 (better in the passive) My grandfather has been invited to a garden party at Buckingham Palace.
  - 3 (fine as an active sentence)
  - 4 (better in the passive) Reference books must not be taken from the library.
  - 5 (fine as an active sentence – the focus here is on the person rather than the invention)
  - 6 (better in the passive) A Bulgarian scientist is said to have discovered a drug that prevents ageing.
  - 7 (better in the passive) You're wanted in reception. You'll be told what it's about.
  - 8 (better in the passive) Eight people were buried by an avalanche in Austria.
  - 9 (better in the passive) He is known to be a very good judge of character.
  - 10 (better in the passive if the focus is on the robber) The violent robber who has been on the run for a week has finally been recaptured. (or fine in the active if the focus is on the police)
- 4
- 2 behave yourselves
  - 3 help yourself / yourselves
  - 4 applied herself
  - 5 content ourselves
  - 6 busied themselves
  - 7 fancies herself
  - 8 kick myself
- 5
- 1 b
  - 2 1 To be our faithful servants – to do the things that we couldn't or didn't want to do ourselves.
  - 2 A computer program that is able to create/compose music.
  - 3 Experiments in Musical Intelligence. They were outraged as it took their work and used it to create new music using their style/technique. Composers presumably felt that EMI was demeaning their creative talent and just copying their style.
- 6
- 1 Her father
  - 2 Her mum
  - 3 His mum
  - 4 Her ex-husband
  - 5 From himself
  - 6 Her grandmother
  - 7 His grandmother
  - 8 An actor friend
- 7
- 1 love, home and work
  - 2 paddle your own canoe
  - 3 follow your heart, freedom
  - 4 faults
  - 5 go shopping, are hungry
  - 6 will pass
  - 7 WP, willpower
  - 8 off, dilly-dally
- 8
- 2 Fiona
  - 3 Lizzie
  - 4 Elaine
  - 5 Sue
  - 6 Chris
  - 7 Justin
  - 8 Simon
- 9
- 1 X He works out daily.
  - 2 X I took to her straightaway.
  - 3 ✓
  - 4 X ... I couldn't get through to you.
  - 5 X ... I'd easily pick it up living in Madrid ...
  - 6 ✓
  - 7 X Their plans fell through.
  - 8 X ... they are looking into it.
  - 9 ✓
  - 10 X ... settle down together.
- 10
- 2 supportive / encouraging
  - 3 bubbly / energetic
  - 4 patronizing / condescending
  - 5 outraged / indignant
  - 6 offended / distraught

- 9 1 was absolutely gutted  
2 was completely blown away  
3 were beside themselves  
4 was bored rigid  
5 'm thrilled to bits  
6 making such a fuss  
7 totally lost it
- 10 1 1 origins, original  
2 curiosity, curious  
3 energy, energetic  
4 collaborate, collaboration  
5 influence, influential
- 2 ●● = outraged, upright, naked  
●● = distraught, success  
●●● = ancestors, gratitude  
●●● = indignant, offended, inhabit  
●●● = interrupt, reproduce  
●●●● = patronizing, ultimately  
●●●● = embarrassment, incompetent, insomnia  
●●●● = evolution, controversial, generation

## Unit 2

- 1 1 1 c 2 a 3 b 4 e 5 d 6 g  
7 i 8 h 9 j 10 f
- 2 1 sincerely hope  
2 fully understand  
3 virtually impossible  
4 eagerly await  
5 highly unlikely  
6 distinctly remember  
7 bitterly disappointed  
8 perfectly clear  
9 sorely tempted  
10 deeply regret
- 3 1 absolutely 6 perfectly  
2 completely 7 strongly  
3 entirely 8 fully  
4 wildly 9 firmly  
5 safely 10 greatly
- 2 1 late 6 hard  
2 easy 7 Surely  
3 hardly 8 rightly  
4 lately 9 easily  
5 right 10 sure
- 3 1 1 T  
2 F His working class background meant that his parents wanted him to aspire to a profession, e.g. being an accountant, a lawyer, a dentist, or a doctor.  
3 F Her governess was interested in her desire to become a writer, as was Somerset Maugham as he replied to a letter her governess had sent to him about her and advised her what she should do to become a writer.  
4 F He joked around like other kids, but didn't write jokes.

- 5 T  
6 F Plots change as new ideas occur during the writing process.  
7 F He 'shakes' (= rereads) what he has written and if it still works he's had a good day.
- 2 1 Michael Holroyd, because he is a biographer.  
2 P.D. James, because her ideas change as she writes.  
3 Wendy Cope, because she is a poet.  
4 Michael Morpurgo, because he writes children's books.  
5 Penelope Lively, because she already had advice from Somerset Maugham.  
6 Ian Rankin, because he changed his mind about his career and followed his dream.  
7 Beryl Bainbridge, as she admits her novels are about her own life.
- 3 1 Ian Rankin, an epiphany  
2 Wendy Cope, agenda  
3 Michael Morpurgo, triggered  
4 Penelope Lively, aspiration  
5 Ian Rankin's, standard of living  
6 Michael Holroyd, come to bits  
7 P.D. James, huge enthusiasm  
8 Wendy Cope, dead
- 4 1 western China, George Robertson (friend), the conductor, the engine driver, a Chinese woman  
2 built = constructed  
valley = pass  
a good idea = nifty  
totally isolated = extremely remote  
wilderness = sand dunes and nothing  
water tank = watering tower  
take a walk = stretch my legs  
baking = blazing  
practically perfect = pretty impeccable  
beauty = loveliness  
gorgeous = beautiful  
rather serious = slightly unsmiling
- 3 1 To see how much time she had before the train left.  
2 Have you ever read the works of Anthony Trollope? It surprised him because he didn't expect her to know about this writer.  
3 It's the title of the book that the Chinese lady wants to discuss with him.  
4 Simon struggled through the conversation because he couldn't remember a lot about the book she wanted to discuss. He scribbled his name so that the woman could keep in contact with him.  
5 The Chinese woman scabbled on the ground to pick up the card with

- his details on as the train pulled away so that she could keep it and contact him again.
- 6 Because Simon told her that he loved her and wanted to marry her after only a short conversation with her.
- 4 1 T  
2 F She regularly cycles 30 miles across the desert to meet the train.  
3 T  
4 F There have been migrant workers on the train who she can speak to in English.  
5 F They're the best of friends and have been for years.
- 5 1 Positive: famous, firm, frank, assertive, self-confident, frugal, eloquent  
Negative: notorious, authoritarian, tactless, aggressive, cocky, stingy, long-winded
- 2 1 stingy, frugal  
2 tactless, frank  
3 self-confident, cocky  
4 eloquent, long-winded  
5 famous, notorious  
6 aggressive, assertive  
7 firm, authoritarian
- 6 1 noisy, crowded, downtown  
2 ✓  
3 cool, dark, peaceful  
4 beautiful, old, wooden  
5 ✓  
6 large, deep  
7 long, black, bamboo  
8 ✓  
9 interesting young  
10 pale blue, cotton  
11 long, cold  
12 ✓
- 7 1 massive 11 cascading  
2 swung back 12 refused  
3 marched 13 account for  
4 demanding to know 14 swung round  
5 caught sight of 15 fury  
6 ornate 16 crimson  
7 momentarily 17 all at once  
8 resplendent 18 drooped  
9 turquoise 19 desperately  
10 gown 20 forlorn
- 8 1 on, l 7 for, d  
2 of, f 8 to, e  
3 to, a 9 with, j  
4 from, h 10 of, g  
5 for, b 11 on, i  
6 about, c 12 with, k
- 9 1 1 e 2 c 3 b 4 a 5 d  
2 and 3 Listen to the audio to compare and check your answers.

- 4 2 heard, herd      7 bear, bare  
 3 meat, meet      8 pear, pair  
 4 suite, sweet      9 rose, rows  
 5 here, hear      10 choose, chews  
 6 dear, deer  
 5 flower, flour  
 witch, which  
 wear, where  
 flew, flu  
 sores, soars, saws  
 sauce, source  
 court, caught  
 peace, piece

### Unit 3

- 1 2 being, spoiling  
 3 helping, to sort out  
 4 to play, being looked after  
 5 know, to be kept  
 6 being, go  
 7 seeing, to be moved  
 8 not to make, to leave  
 9 to persuade, to change, getting  
 10 to pay, doing
- 2 1 X to forget      7 ✓  
 2 ✓      8 X to become  
 3 ✓      9 X examining  
 4 X writing      10 ✓  
 5 ✓      11 X having  
 6 X to charge      12 ✓
- 3 2 Sandra has stopped eating meat.  
 3 I'm Edward, but I'd / would rather be called 'Ted'.  
 4 Do you feel like going out this evening?  
 5 Donna reminded me to bring my swimming costume.  
 6 They can't force you to work overtime.  
 7 We don't mind sharing a taxi with you.  
 8 Why won't you admit to cheating in the exam?  
 9 Babis suggested we stayed / stay at Hotel Maistrali.  
 10 The travel agent said we'd better book early.
- 4 2 playing      14 to get  
 3 helping      15 to take  
 4 to have      16 stop  
 5 to start      17 being able to  
 6 to visit      18 to donate  
 7 having      19 selling / to sell  
 8 to show      20 to grow /  
 9 describe      growing  
 10 facing      21 missing  
 11 saying      22 spending  
 12 realize      23 seeing / to see  
 13 to help      24 to do

- 5 1 a drove an old Volkswagen Beetle  
 b a small farmhouse  
 c more  
 2 a 5 b 3 c 4 d 7 e 2 f 1  
 g 6  
 3 1 ... donates the vast bulk of his salary to social projects  
 2 'If I asked people to live as I live, they would kill me.'  
 3 ... reaffirmed Uruguay as the most socially liberal country in South America.  
 4 ... spent 14 years in a military prison, much of it in dungeon-like conditions.  
 5 Mujica cuts an impressively unpolished figure.  
 6 I'm just sick of the way things are.  
 7 'We're in an age in which we can't live without accepting the logic of the market.' 'What we have left is the automatization of doing what the market tells us.'  
 8 'We can almost recycle everything now. If we lived within our means – by being prudent – the seven billion people in the world could have everything they needed.'
- 4 2 pragmatism      7 austerity  
 3 notorious      8 sustainable  
 4 grudgingly      9 tag  
 5 folly      10 mattress  
 6 bulk
- 6 1 a rise steadily      b shoot up  
 c peak      d pick up  
 e fluctuate      f level off  
 2 a remain stable      b decrease gradually  
 c plummet      d fall slightly  
 e bottom out  
 3 1 rose steadily  
 2 shot up  
 3 peaked  
 4 fell slightly  
 5 levelling off  
 6 gradual decrease  
 7 picked up  
 8 fell slightly  
 9 remained stable  
 10 rising steadily / picking up
- 7 1 Because they arrived in Britain with only £5 and went on to make a fortune through their businesses.  
 2 1 a 2 a 3 b 4 b 5 a 6 b  
 3 1 F Both brothers have received a business award.  
 2 T  
 3 F They've got the same friends they had when they were younger.  
 4 T  
 5 T  
 6 T

- 4 1 provide employment  
 2 Speaking for myself  
 3 would like to think that  
 4 in terms of, indulge  
 5 philanthropic, waste money  
 6 distractions, go for it  
 7 touch, is done  
 5 1 d 2 f 3 e 4 g 5 a 6 h  
 7 c 8 b
- 8 1 1 -down      6 down  
 2 up      7 down  
 3 down      8 down  
 4 up      9 up  
 5 up  
 2 1 slow down / will slow down, speed up  
 2 cutting down, save up  
 3 dumbed down, lighten up  
 4 run down, do / did ... up  
 5 shut down / boot up  
 6 brought down, stand down  
 7 had been bought up / would have been bought up, track down  
 8 wound up, live down
- 9 2 2 Interest, average  
 3 preference, specialist  
 4 electorate, reasonable  
 5 Liberal, rational  
 6 Corporate, travellers  
 7 seasonal, factories  
 8 nationally, different

### Unit 4

- 1 1 must  
 2 will / must / should  
 3 should / might / may / could  
 4 can't  
 5 can  
 6 might / may / could  
 7 won't / can't  
 8 should / must
- 2 2 d can't have gone  
 3 g must / should have finished  
 4 e won't have told  
 5 b can / could / might I have put  
 6 a could / might have been  
 7 c should / could have rung
- 3 1 we wasted £15  
 2 as a child  
 3 I'm putting on too much weight  
 4 often take me camping  
 5 be really hot  
 6 but it would be nice if you did
- 4 1 will  
 2 can't  
 3 might  
 4 will / may  
 5 mustn't  
 6 can

- 7 could  
8 wouldn't  
9 had to  
10 must have  
11 will have  
12 needn't have worried  
13 may have  
14 should  
15 mustn't  
16 didn't have to be  
17 must have been  
18 may have  
19 should have  
20 could
- 5 1** 1 b must                      9 h 'ill  
2 c must                      10 l can't  
3 a must                      11 j can't  
4 f should                      12 k can  
5 d shouldn't                      13 n might  
6 e should                      14 m might  
7 i 'll                      15 o might  
8 g will
- 2** 1 I might have guessed  
2 I can't be bothered  
3 They will keep ringing  
4 I must say,  
5 You might well ask!  
6 I should think so too!  
7 how should I know?  
8 You can say that again!  
9 We might as well  
10 we'll see
- 6 1** 1 = trainers, baggy jeans, bomber jacket, baseball cap  
2 = lapel, sequins, make-up  
3 = shiny dinner jacket, bow tie, top hat, magic wand  
a = 1    b = 3    c = 2
- 2** Photo I shows Dynamo.  
1 a minority interest  
2 his public completely confused  
3 read people's minds  
4 he developed a health problem  
5 didn't fit in there  
6 was lent some money  
7 Internet clips  
8 modest nature  
9 latecomer to  
10 different
- 3** 1 d    2 f    3 e    4 g    5 a    6 c  
7 b
- 7 1** 1 Location  
2 Parking  
3 Front garden  
4 Condition of house  
5 Living room  
6 Kitchen  
7 Dining room  
8 Back garden  
9 Price

- 2 2 are within walking distance  
3 a regular bus service  
4 ideal for the DIY enthusiast, of paint certainly wouldn't go amiss  
5 is in need of some attention  
6 on the old side perhaps, Ideal for  
7 not exactly enormous  
8 isn't the brightest room in the house  
9 very mature and well-established  
10 exactly cheap
- 3 2** World Cup level  
3 the most exciting  
4 on the watery side  
5 exactly welcoming  
6 go amiss  
7 ample opportunity  
8 the best curry
- 4** A 6    B 2    C 8    D 5    E 4    F 3  
G 7    H 1
- 8** 1 long shot  
2 sore point  
3 foregone conclusion  
4 last resort  
5 saving grace  
6 fine line  
7 raw deal  
8 wishful thinking  
9 itchy feet  
10 slippery slope
- 9** 1 yap                      9 roared  
2 sizzling                      10 buzzing  
3 roared                      11 whining  
4 rumbling                      12 sizzling  
5 creaked                      13 creaking  
6 squealed                      14 squealed  
7 buzzing                      15 rumbled  
8 whine /                      16 yapping  
whining
- 10** 2 He might have told me what was going on. b  
He might have told me what was going on. a  
3 Do you have to work all evening? b  
Do you have to work all evening? a  
4 You could have hit him. a  
You could have hit him. b  
5 I might go out this evening. a  
I might go out this evening. b  
6 I could hardly walk home. a  
I could hardly walk home. b  
7 Jason will keep singing. b  
Jason will keep singing. a  
8 You could close the door. a  
You could close the door. b
- 11** 1 to                      6 to  
2 against                      7 as  
3 into                      8 for  
4 to                      9 on / about  
5 on                      10 at

## Unit 5

- 1** 2 is                      11 have  
3 do                      12 won't  
4 didn't                      13 will  
5 did                      14 was  
6 have                      15 could  
7 do                      16 can  
8 wouldn't                      17 will  
9 did                      18 Would  
10 didn't
- 2 1** 2 persuaded ... to  
3 used to  
4 're not allowed to  
5 tried to  
6 won't be able to
- 2** The translator and the audience.
- 3** 1 had to  
2 learnt / learned to  
3 don't have to  
4 tried to  
5 expected ... to  
6 pretended to  
7 told ... to
- 3 1** ridiculous
- 2** 1 mates  
2 companion  
3 colleagues  
4 adores, worships  
5 've fancied  
6 fell for  
7 gossip  
8 had a word, 'll let ... know  
9 chatting  
10 are ... giggling  
11 sniggers  
12 guffaws  
13 chuckling  
14 journey  
15 cruise  
16 trip  
17 voyages  
18 stride  
19 staggering  
20 dawdling  
21 waddle
- 4 1** autobiographical
- 2** 1 T  
2 F Felipe and Liz are lifelong travellers.  
3 F The incompatibility between them is how differently they travel.  
4 T  
5 T  
6 F Liz doesn't mind the various discomforts of travel, but Felipe hates strange bathrooms, dirty restaurants, uncomfortable trains and foreign beds.  
7 F He wanted to stay in Laos because it reminded him of Brazil thirty years ago.

- 8 F She wants to settle down eventually, when the time comes.
- 3 1 Liz = southern New York State, the more rural sections of central New Jersey, northwestern Connecticut, and bits of Eastern Pennsylvania. Felipe = at the time when the text was written, it would be Laos, but this may change.
- 2 Felipe. He is the best because he can fit in and settle down anywhere – he learns the language, befriends the locals, etc. But he is also the worst because he hates the discomforts that go hand in hand with travelling.
- 3 She is restless and curious. She wants to see lots of different places, but always wants to move on and doesn't want to settle anywhere except in the US near her family. She is also able to handle the discomforts of travelling very well.
- 4 When you settle down and live in one of the places you were visiting.
- 5 It doesn't matter to Felipe where he is in the world – he can always make a home for himself, whereas for Liz, she enjoys travelling and moving all around.
- 4 1 create a familiar habitat, reassuringly  
2 renders him peerless  
3 infinitely patient, infinitely curious  
4 mishaps and minor disasters  
5 instantly, utterly  
6 blanched, indefinitely  
7 dilettantish
- 5 1 Martine is French, Jaap is Dutch. They met in Provence, in France.
- 2 1 J 2 J 3 M 4 M/J 5 J 6 M
- 3 1 travelling around  
2 with a friend  
3 wake up  
4 seasonal changes  
5 instantly  
6 scientific
- 4 1 the mountains in Provence  
2 the walking trails  
3 the changing view of the mountain  
4 how Remi and Jaap felt after walking from the summit of Mount Ventoux  
5 Remi  
6 the type of man that Martine's friends thought she would marry
- 6 1 1 e tolerate  
2 d assimilates  
3 c deceived  
4 b compensated for  
5 a improving  
6 h pretending  
7 f abolishing  
8 g extracted

- 2 1 blow up 5 stuck up for  
2 threw up 6 told me off  
3 assaulting 7 restored  
4 surrender 8 Keeping up
- 7 2 1 car 5 civilisation  
2 centre 6 new  
3 tomato 7 ham  
4 stop 8 agile
- 3 2 BE 3 AE 4 BE 5 BE 6 AE  
7 AE 8 BE
- 4 1 adult (BE), adult (AE)  
2 brochure (BE), brochure (AE)  
3 laboratory (BE), laboratory (AE)  
4 enquiry (BE), enquiry (AE)  
5 ballet (BE), ballet (AE)  
6 detail (BE), detail (AE)  
7 donate (BE), donate (AE)  
8 debut (BE), debut (AE)

## Unit 6

- 1 1 2 he should do is avoid antagonizing the press  
3 is the ambassador who antagonizes the press  
4 the media did was exaggerate his role in the coup  
5 nobody likes is being criticized  
6 was the lies (that) she wrote that really annoyed me  
7 is / was where she used to work  
8 do know why she left Beirut
- 2 2 The Bank of Scotland is where he works now / It's the Bank of Scotland he works for now  
3 What I'd like to know is why he left Barclays / Why he left Barclays is what I'd like to know / Something I'd like to know is why he left Barclays / The thing I'd like to know is why he left Barclays  
4 he did like the pay / the pay he did like / the pay was something he did like  
5 it's the historic buildings they come to see / the thing they come to see is the historic buildings / what they come to see is the historic buildings  
6 what's also very popular is the theatre / something that's also very popular is the theatre / the theatre's also something that's very popular  
7 the theatre really does boost London's economy / the theatre is what really boosts London's economy / the theatre is something that really boosts London's economy  
8 something a lot of tourists don't realize is / what a lot of tourists don't realize is / the thing that a lot of tourists don't realize is

- 9 the thing I like to do is get out of the city / something I like to do is get out of the city / what I like to do is get out of the city
- 2 1 Never again will I allow myself to be deceived by him.  
2 Seldom does one find someone with such integrity as Harold.  
3 Nothing does he love more than counting all his money.  
4 Little did he suspect what she was up to.  
5 Never before has anyone / anybody spoken to me like that.  
6 Nowhere will you find a kinder man.  
7 Not only was she rude, (but) she was also really unkind.  
8 In no way could her reaction be described as sympathetic.  
9 No sooner than one war ended then the Ruritians started another one.  
10 Not until she threatened to leave him did he realize the error of his ways.
- 3 1 1 c 2 a 3 b 4 d 5 b
- 2 1 However  
2 Wherever, whatever  
3 Wherever / Whenever  
4 whoever  
5 whenever  
6 Whoever / Who on earth  
7 However  
8 whichever
- 4 1 Because of the war – the women couldn't go to war (only men did) but they were needed to work in the fields.  
2 a 4 b 3 c 5 d 2 e 6 f 1  
3 1 When the Women's Land Army was set up.  
2 The minimum age to join the WLA.  
3 The number of shillings they earned per week.  
4 The time in the morning when the working day often started.  
5 The number of hours they worked in the week in the winter and in the summer.  
6 The number of WLA volunteers who had carried out their duties by the end of the war.  
7 When the WLA was disbanded.
- 4 1 Because young men had left agricultural work for work in factories, and the men that did work on farms were joining the armed forces and going away to war.  
2 They were suspicious and didn't think the girls would be able to do the work. They also didn't think it was the right place for decent young women to be.

- 3 They complained because the WLA girls had carried out their duties with dedication, skill, and enthusiasm.
- 4 Because they were desperate to escape city poverty.
- 5 The posters didn't show how hard the work would be and what the uniform would really look like.
- 6 They only received rudimentary training.
- 7 They received less money than the men for the same work, they were regarded with indifference and hostility by the farming community, and many felt that the Italian prisoners of war were treated better and given more food than them.
- 8 Many enjoyed the new way of life in the country, they made many lifelong friends, and the role of women in the countryside and elsewhere was changed forever.
- 5 1 hoe 2 livestock 3 scorn 4 was looming 5 cursory 6 indifference 7 disbanded 8 counterparts 9 felled 10 rudimentary
- 5 1 Year joined the WLA: 1942  
Age on joining the WLA: 16 ½  
Place of birth: Liverpool  
Place of work: Leominster  
Length of service: 3  
Subsequent career: in the RAF  
Age at interview: 89
- 2 1 a ✓ b ✗ c ✓ d ✓  
2 a ✓ b ✗ c ✓ d ✓  
3 a ✗ b ✓ c ✓ d ✓  
4 a ✗ b ✓ c ✓ d ✓  
5 a ✓ b ✗ c ✓ d ✓
- 3 1 sickly  
2 middle of nowhere, queasy  
3 ravenous, forever, sufficient  
4 thistles, clear  
5 had enough, point blank  
6 trickiest, dog-tired  
7 boost, self-esteem  
8 close
- 6 1 2 destruction 3 threaten 4 attack 5 assassinate 6 revolution 7 wound 8 survival 9 invade 10 demolition 11 pacify 12 complaint 13 terrorize 14 loss 15 injure
- 2 1 conquest, had ... invaded  
2 Revolution, attacked  
3 was ... wounded / injured, wounds / injuries  
4 loss, complaint  
5 destruction, be demolished

- 6 was assassinated, survival  
7 Terrorists, threat  
8 pacifists
- 7 1 underwear, fallout, fallback, overall, underground, spin-off, breakthrough, breakout, break-up, outcome, outback, outpatient, downpour, set-up, setback, upshot, pile-up, hang-out, hangover, hang-up, offspring
- 2 1 underwear 2 underground 3 downpour 4 offspring 5 spin-off 6 upshot 7 outpatient 8 setback 9 breakthrough 10 outcome 11 fallout 12 hangover 13 pile-up
- 8 1 1 You're kidding. I thought it was awful.  
2 It was all special effects and no story.  
3 You're telling me.  
4 It was. I didn't understand a word.  
5 I didn't know who was chasing who or why.  
6 Not to me. What I need is a recognizable plot.  
7 If you call noise and violence exciting.  
8 I wouldn't recommend it to anyone.  
9 Well, you know him better than I do.  
10 If there is a next time.
- 2 1 b 2 c 3 a 4 e 5 f 6 d 7 i 8 g 9 h 10 k 11 l 12 j

### Unit 7

- 1 3 you weren't so stubborn and (you) would listen to my advice (sometimes)  
4 hasn't been painted / wasn't painted yellow  
5 will never / won't ever admit he's wrong  
6 we weren't working when the boss popped in  
7 he was / were an expert and had a degree in linguistics  
8 'd been able to speak English and hadn't misunderstood me  
9 Sally hadn't come  
10 he'd had to go to prison and pay for his crimes / he'd gone to prison and paid for his crimes
- 2 2 had  
3 would (past habit)  
4 had  
5 would, had (unreal situation)  
6 would (past habit)  
7 would (unreal situation)  
8 would (future in the past)

- 3 4 didn't have to 5 're going 6 would 7 hadn't 8 'd never bought 9 didn't / doesn't know 10 was / is 11 took 12 'd prefer 13 did 14 wouldn't do 15 wouldn't mind 16 did 17 does 18 'd lighten up 19 would 20 was / were / 's 21 would guess / would have guessed 22 lives / lived 23 got / were getting 24 'm enjoying
- 4 1 e wouldn't be driving around  
2 d going to suggest  
3 g wouldn't play / wouldn't be playing  
4 a wouldn't have been given  
5 c wouldn't be having  
6 b wasn't having / wasn't going to have  
7 h didn't have  
8 f would have offered
- 5 1 if ever I saw one 2 if not exactly 3 if ever 4 if any 5 If so 6 As if 7 If not
- 6 1 1 c 2 e 3 a 4 b 5 d 6 j 7 i 8 f 9 h 10 g  
2 1 chirpy 2 elated 3 wistful 4 bitter 5 gleeful 6 an upbeat 7 out of sorts 8 despondent 9 in the doldrums 10 content
- 7 1 it lasted 2 in disguise 3 nothing gained 4 on in, look back 5 is done, win 6 out alright 7 come, go 8 late, never 9 learn 10 mind, next time
- 8 1 The phrase 'Let's make sure he's dead.' The speaker intended for the other person to check for breathing, whereas this was misinterpreted as 'ensure that he is dead' – so kill him if not!
- 2 2 e 3 i 4 h 5 f 6 b 7 c 8 a 9 d
- 3 1 F Readers rated the funniest joke from thousands sent in by other readers.  
2 T  
3 T  
4 F The effect of laughter can be seen in many parts of the brain.  
5 T  
6 T
- 4 1 anticipate 2 register 3 immune 4 absurd 5 bonding 6 glazed 7 offensive

9 1 and 2 1 d 2 g 3 h 4 f 5 c  
6 a 7 e 8 b

- 3 1 Because bears can run faster than humans.  
2 History teacher  
3 sew  
4 He sits at the back of the lecture theatre and listens, wearing the chauffeur's uniform.  
5 Astronomically, c  
Horologically, a  
Meteorologically, b

4 1 h, d 3 b, l 5 a, c  
2 j, k 4 f, i 6 e, g  
5 1 g 2 d 3 e 4 f 5 b 6 h  
7 a 8 c

- 10 2 catching 7 split  
3 go 8 sneak up  
4 Dream 9 wear  
5 write 10 keep  
6 verges

- 11 2 he hadn't insulted me, I wouldn't have avoided him  
3 'd upgrade if they'd offered me a discount  
4 he'd impressed me more at the interview, I would have employed him  
5 I'd enrol if the college had opened  
6 you hadn't overcooked the vegetables, I'd have eaten them  
7 you'd achieved as much as me, you'd earn the same  
8 wouldn't have ignored you if you hadn't interrupted her  
9 she hadn't annoyed me so much, I'd apologize  
10 it'd occurred to me, I'd have asked them for a lift

## Unit 8

1 1 2 D 3 ND 4 ND 5 D 6 ND  
7 D 8 ND 9 D 10 D

- 2 b who come from Japan 1  
c which I wasn't expecting 6  
d who I've been wanting to introduce you to for ages 2  
e when there were hardly any women politicians 9  
f whose parents don't set behavioural boundaries 5  
g who you saw me talking to 7  
h who live in glass houses 10  
i who is ten years younger than me 3  
j whose brains are a bit bigger than women's 8

- 2 The second sentence with *whose* is more formal.

- 1 There were hundreds of people at the show, the majority of whom gave the actors a standing ovation.  
2 I watched the whole programme, parts of which were very boring.  
3 He has over 500 friends on Facebook, only a few of whom he knows well.  
4 I've collected hundreds of recipes, most of which my grandmother gave me.  
5 He owns three houses, none of which he lives in.  
6 She entered two races, neither of which she won.  
7 I have two brothers, both of whose wives I get on well with.  
8 I went to check on the swans, three of whose cygnets had been eaten by a fox.

- 3 1 which 5 which  
2 where / when 6 when  
3 which 7 which  
4 why 8 whose

- 4 1 He fed the baby while talking to me on his phone. / While talking to me on the phone, he fed the baby.  
2 By investing wisely, they made a fortune. / They made a fortune by investing wisely. / They made a fortune after investing wisely.  
3 On arriving at the conference centre you must register immediately.  
4 Since having twins she's had no time for herself. / She's had no time for herself since having twins.  
5 After hearing a storm was coming we decided not to go sailing. / We decided not to go sailing after hearing a storm was coming.  
6 Turn on the burglar alarm before leaving the building. / Before leaving the building, turn on the burglar alarm.

- 5 1 currently working  
2 that surprised her  
3 While dropping off  
4 being asked  
5 to be addressed  
6 totally unfazed  
7 before pinning on  
8 labelled  
9 where other options  
10 the extent to which  
11 when describing  
12 having been replaced  
13 well-respected  
14 which of these new pronouns  
15 a passing fad

- 6 1 Because the women were wearing trousers of some kind, rather than the

dressess or skirts they would normally have worn. Also, their outfits differed from those worn by male football players at the time.

- 2 1 Nellie Hudson: founded the British Ladies' Football Club.  
Helen Matthews: a goalkeeper who found the first female Scottish side before joining Nellie Hudson.  
Nettie J. Honeyball: the name Nellie Hudson was known by.  
Mrs Graham: the name Helen Matthews played under.  
Stuart Gibbs: helped compile the exhibition on the British Ladies' Football Club.  
Colin Yates: historian and organizer of the exhibition.  
2 'billowing' and 'voluminous'; You can't see the bloomers because they are underwear.  
3 1 F Female football teams sparked off riots and contributed to greater empowerment for women.  
2 T  
3 F Their footballing skills are described as 'silky', not their clothes.  
4 F It was thought that they would not want their own sisters or daughters 'exhibiting themselves' by playing football.  
5 T  
6 T  
7 F They were banned because of the riots that erupted after the matches.  
8 F She moved to England because of the ban in Scotland. She only joined Nellie later.  
4 1 clashes, sparked  
2 flocked, unladylike spectacle  
3 dainty way  
4 a furor  
5 fixed resolve  
6 compiled  
5 In buttoned-up blouses and billowing bloomers ...  
But these are the members of Britain's first official female football teams – whose clashes on the field in the 1880s sparked riots off it and ...  
The pictures, uncovered as part of an exhibition charting the history of women's football, reveal the characters who tackled a man's world for the first time.  
However, while thousands flocked to see their matches, by 1895, when these photographs were taken, ... The young women presented a pretty appearance on the field ... as well as the dainty way in which the women set them off.

Casting aside corsets in favour of voluminous knickerbockers and prim bonnets ...

... it is not surprising that the match was attended by a crowd numbering several thousands, very few of whom would like to have their own sisters or daughters exhibiting themselves on the football field.' At the centre of the furore was the British Ladies' Football Club, which played dozens of games that year. Founded by the enigmatic Nellie Hudson, known as Nettie I. Honeyball, the club fielded teams called North and South, which played against each other. In the North team was Helen Matthews, a goalkeeper who played under the name of Mrs Graham.

Stuart Gibbs, 47, who helped compile the exhibition, said ...

'The games often caused anger from men who disliked women doing what, at the time, was a man's job.'

- 7 1 knowledgeable  
2 was shared by millions online  
3 categorized, tricked  
4 persuaded her to  
5 boring and nerdy  
6 absurdly
- 2 Riley Barry, 4, complained on YouTube™ about pink and blue packaging for toys Emma Owen, 7, wrote to Lego™ requesting more girls figures doing more exciting activities Gavyn Boscio, 4, didn't want a Hasbro Easy-Bake Oven that was just marketed to girls McKenna Pope, 13, petitioned Hasbro to make an oven that was gender neutral
- 3 1 an online forum where people can discuss parenting issues  
2 it's possible to change things if enough people join together to do so  
3 she didn't want to be told what she could play with  
4 approached Lego with an idea for new characters  
5 was being sexist in its advertising for its toy oven  
6 its new gender neutral toy display was financially successful
- 8 1 from 7 for  
2 to 8 on  
3 upon 9 with  
4 with 10 on, on  
5 of 11 into  
6 with 12 into
- 9 2 distant, fresh  
3 difficult, awkward  
4 overcast, guilty  
5 close, recent

- 6 balanced, high  
7 exorbitant, irrational  
8 successful, unassuming  
9 pale, timid  
10 excitable, rough

- 10 1 1 My mum, whose cakes are the best in the world, never taught me to cook.  
2 I was shown to my room at which point I decided to look for another hotel.  
3 (No punctuation needed.)  
4 Her eldest daughter, who's expecting a baby, lives nearby.  
5 My grandchildren don't play outdoors enough, which worries me.  
6 (No punctuation needed.)  
7 This gold watch, left to me by my grandfather, is my most valuable possession.  
8 (No punctuation needed.)
- 2 /ʃ/ social, delicious, technician, patience, pressure, chef, sufficient, option, session  
/tʃ/ children, nurture, nature, creatures, research  
/z/ Asia, measure, usual, pleasure  
/dʒ/ gender, passengers, prejudice, huge, encouraged, energetic
- 3 1 Patience is a virtue.  
2 The chef's food was delicious, as usual.  
3 That fish is huge.  
4 Scientists haven't done sufficient research yet.  
5 Pressure at work isn't a pleasure.  
6 Which is more important – nature or nurture?

## Unit 9

- 1 1 2 h Surely  
3 d To be honest,  
4 f At least  
5 b Predictably,  
6 c No doubt  
7 a Admittedly,  
8 e Surprisingly,
- 2 1 it was very hot and full of tourists  
2 your money will be losing value  
3 it would have been nice if it had rained a bit less!  
4 I don't really care  
5 he is our boss.  
6 it's got nothing to do with you.  
7 commuting will be easier.  
8 I'm looking forward to it!
- 2 1 1 American  
2 No, he sang with a band.  
3 18  
4 Probably cancer – as this is the charity his legacy supports.

- 2 1 Naturally, 8 besides,  
2 Alarmingly, 9 given that  
3 Tragically, 10 Unusually,  
4 otherwise 11 inevitably,  
5 Above all, 12 aptly enough  
6 Apparently, 13 Actually,  
7 at least 14 honestly

- 3 1 Obviously 9 Apparently  
2 after all 10 given that  
3 quite honestly 11 Funnily enough  
4 Surely 12 To be fair  
5 Bizarrely 13 Anyway  
6 presumably 14 clearly  
7 unfortunately 15 Still  
8 Frankly

- 4 1 2 songwriter R, composer C  
3 lead guitarist R, first violinist C  
4 percussionist C, drummer R  
5 pianist C, keyboard player R  
6 band R, ensemble C  
7 choir C, backing vocalists R  
8 riff R, motif C  
9 guitar legend R, maestro C  
10 arrangement C, cover version R  
11 quintet C, five-piece band R  
12 session musician R, accompanist C
- 2 1 keyboard player  
2 composer  
3 backing vocalists  
4 lead guitarist  
5 ensembles  
6 riff  
7 recital  
8 cover version  
9 choir  
10 arrangement

- 5 1 A rare, heir, billionaire, prayer, swear  
B view, queue, blew, debut, through  
C plea, flee, key, quay, debris  
D dough, flow, sew, plateau, foe

- 2 b foe h sew  
c plateau i quay  
d debris j flow  
e plea k heir  
f debut l flee  
g dough

- 6 2 word 8 mate  
3 money 9 lies  
4 feet 10 pinch  
5 thieves 11 clue  
6 wife 12 head  
7 look

- 7 1 a 7 b 6 c 1 d 5 e 3 f 9  
g 2 h 8 i 4

- 2 1 F He didn't come from a deprived background and his gritty sound came about after he bit off the tip of his tongue.  
2 F He wanted to become a journalist or a politician.

- 3 F They lost contact for a while when they went to different secondary schools.  
 4 T  
 5 F He left college early so he didn't graduate.  
 6 T  
 7 F They were the two major groups of the time.  
 8 F The Queen wasn't there.  
 3 1 d 2 g 3 e 4 f 5 h 6 a  
 7 c 8 b

### 8 1 and 2

- 1 ✓ 2 ✓ 3 X 4 X 5 ✓ 6 X  
 7 ✓ 8 ✓

- 3 1 No. He was expecting some kickback on it.  
 2 Anaesthetists.  
 3 It looks wrong to have an office full of people wearing headphones. They should wear earphones instead.  
 4 Mechanical and repetitive work.  
 5 Spare attention.  
 6 Classical.

- 4 1 c 2 j 3 f 4 h 5 i 6 k 7 a  
 8 d 9 l 10 e 11 b 12 g

- 9 2 feel up to 8 put up with  
 3 standing in for 9 go in for  
 4 face up to 10 pull out of  
 5 talk ... out of 11 looks up to  
 6 ended up with 12 keep up with  
 7 come in for

- 10 2 1 You need patience to deal with children.  
 2 I need to buy a nice shirt to go with these trousers.  
 3 What time does the supermarket open?  
 4 I think we should walk back to the hotel.  
 5 Yes, I'd love to go out with you.  
 6 I'd like a bit more milk in this coffee.  
 7 We've heard it's going to be fantastic!  
 8 I wonder what the doctor said about Harry's shoulder?  
 9 I think you need to be more open-minded.

- 10 Would you like another piece of chocolate cake?

- 2 1 Phenomenal! 6 Inconceivable!  
 2 Unbelievable! 7 Astronomical!  
 3 Ridiculous! 8 Fascinating!  
 4 Revolutionary! 9 Unprecedented!  
 5 Extraordinary! 10 Sensational!

## Unit 10

- 1 2 is reported to have reached speeds of 44 km per hour  
 3 is assumed that his speed results from an unusually long stride  
 4 is estimated / has been estimated that 90% of his energy is used combatting wind resistance  
 5 is thought to be earning more than \$20m a year from sponsorship deals  
 6 is known to eat chicken nuggets before a big race  
 7 is expected to end his career with a record number of Olympic gold medals  
 8 is said to be a late riser, getting up at 10.00 most days  
 9 is reported to have once considered playing for Manchester United  
 10 is known to have also been a keen cricket player before turning to athletics
- 2 3 seemed that the winning cyclist had been using drugs  
 4 of the patients appeared to have been given placebos  
 5 would appear that her knee has healed satisfactorily  
 6 seems to be planning to retire soon  
 7 antibiotics appear to be losing their effectiveness  
 8 seems that his hearing is getting worse
- 3 2 was thought to be suffering  
 3 seemed to be  
 4 was not expected to do  
 5 was concluded that she was suffering / suffered  
 6 was supposed to compete / was supposed to be competing  
 7 appeared to be  
 8 was judged to be  
 9 was said to have had / is said to have had / was said to have / has been said to have had / has been said to have  
 10 is considered to be  
 11 is also alleged to have exaggerated / has also been alleged to have exaggerated  
 12 appears to be  
 13 is known to be / has been known to be  
 14 are now believed to have been

- 4 1 d 93.  
 2 He has been happy with his health at the age of 13-39, in his 60s, and 86-93.  
 3 1 60s 6 85  
 2 40s 7 6-12  
 3 13-39 8 40s  
 4 86-93 9 86-93  
 5 13-39 10 6-12

- 4 1 h 2 f 3 g 4 e 5 i 6 j 7 d  
 8 b 9 c 10 a

- 5 1 1 pinch 6 slapping  
 2 winked 7 Squeeze  
 3 shoved 8 rub  
 4 nudged 9 patted  
 5 stroking 10 munching  
 2 2 mouth 8 thumb  
 3 feet 9 arms  
 4 knees 10 heart  
 5 lips 11 jaw  
 6 neck 12 shoulder  
 7 throat

- 6 1 shocked  
 2 obvious  
 3 hidden  
 4 afraid  
 5 pleasurable  
 6 go without a plan  
 7 respect  
 8 wild  
 9 ironic  
 10 work hard  
 11 accept  
 12 confrontational

- 7 2 1 b 2 a 3 b 4 b 5 a 6 a  
 7 b 8 a  
 3 1 a lighter laptop  
 2 a small light bulb  
 3 never  
 4 spatial awareness / face recognition / visual imagery  
 5 left  
 6 10%  
 7 60%  
 8 aerobic  
 4 1 d 2 f 3 e 4 a 5 g 6 b  
 7 c

- 8 1 1 h 2 g 3 e 4 i 5 j 6 d 7 a  
 8 c 9 b 10 f  
 2 2 be dealt with  
 3 were warned / 'd been warned about  
 4 be accused of  
 5 be subjected to  
 6 be forced into  
 7 be involved in  
 8 be charged for  
 9 be congratulated on  
 10 be held against

- 9 1 1 F 2 F 3 R 4 F 5 R 6 F  
 7 R 8 F 9 R 10 R  
 2 1 2 isn't it (F)  
 3 is (F)  
 4 do (F)  
 5 don't they (F)  
 2 1 wasn't (F)  
 2 did (F)  
 3 didn't they (F)  
 4 isn't (R)

- 3 1 have (R)
- 2 has (F)
- 3 doesn't (R)
- 4 does (F)
- 4 1 isn't (F)
- 2 is (F)
- 3 has (R)
- 4 was (R)
- 5 does (R)
- 6 does (R)
- 7 Was (R)
- 8 do (F)

## Unit 11

- 1 1 Present simple / *will* + infinitive d
- 2 *going to* + infinitive b
- 3 *going to* + infinitive f
- 4 *will* + infinitive e
- 5 Present Continuous a
- 6 Future Continuous j
- 7 Future Continuous i
- 8 *will* + infinitive c
- 9 Future in the past h
- 10 Future Perfect g
- 2 1 will have exhibited
- 2 would defeat
- 3 will be able to
- 4 will have had to
- 5 have read, will be able to
- 6 is giving, Will you be going, I'm going, starts, I'll see, I'll give
- 3 1 a expected
- b formal news report
- c very close in time
- 2 a will arrive (according to the taxi company's prediction) / arrives (according to the schedule) / is going to (the taxi company has just told me) / will be arriving (that's the time arranged and they are always punctual)
- b is making (less formal, it's been arranged) / will make (simple fact) / is going to arrive (it's been announced, but possibly not planned yet) / will be making (it's part of his regular visits)
- c 'm going to lose (not as imminent)
- 3 2 is due to land, will land / is landing / lands
- 3 are to meet / are due to meet, are going to meet / will meet / will be meeting
- 4 is about to begin / is due to begin, is going to begin
- 5 are to be offered, will be offered / are going to be offered
- 6 'm about to lose, 'm going to lose
- 4 2 was going to give / was about to give

- 3 would get / was going to get
- 4 were about to emigrate / were going to emigrate
- 5 was due to arrive
- 6 was ... going to complain / was ... about to complain
- 7 were about to show / were going to show / were showing me
- 8 were coming / were going to come

- 5 2 1 B 2 C 3 A 4 B 5 A 6 A  
7 C 8 A 9 B 10 A 11 A  
12 C

- 3 1 T
- 2 F He believed that fresh food would travel in massive refrigerators.
- 3 T
- 4 F He believed that most people would live outside the city.
- 5 F She wrote adventure stories in which women took lead roles.
- 6 T
- 7 F She thought that technology would continue to free women from their traditionally restricted roles in society.
- 8 T
- 9 F They drew pictures of people on the moon.
- 10 T

- 4 1 innovations 5 little-known  
2 springboard 6 fervently  
3 quaintly 7 took to, dismay  
4 any inkling 8 envisaged

- 6 1 a new fail-safe way of connecting by phone = B
- monitoring our health = C
- learning how to programme for ourselves = D
- using our bodies as passwords = A
- 2 1 B 2 C 3 D 4 A
- 3 1 Because it is only yours and would only work for you.
- 2 It was named after the Italian philosopher, Giovanni Pico, who had an extraordinary memory. It would stop working outside your aura field.
- 3 Because connections can be passed down a line like a bucket of water in a fire.
- 4 If regular telecom systems failed.
- 5 They will be implanted.
- 6 Sensors will predict illnesses so that they can be treated early, before the treatment becomes more expensive.
- 7 It allows us to control our technology.
- 8 We can be in control of our own destinies.
- 4 1 come up with
- 2 junk
- 3 to get through to
- 4 have gone down / have failed
- 5 commonplace

- 6 spiralled
- 7 keep up with
- 8 didn't take to

- 7 1 go down 8 got through  
2 get through 9 went down  
3 stood up for 10 come up with  
4 keep up with 11 saw through  
5 came up with 12 Stand up for  
6 see through 13 taken to  
7 Take ... to 14 keep up with

- 8 1 1 c 2 h 3 b 4 i 5 j 6 a 7 f  
8 e 9 d 10 g

- 2 1 is a well-oiled machine
- 2 are on the same wavelength
- 3 firing on all cylinders
- 4 not rocket science
- 5 throw a spanner in the works
- 6 light years ahead
- 7 got our wires crossed
- 8 blew a fuse
- 9 reinventing the wheel
- 10 push the panic button

- 9 1 It's about a spelling checker. A lot of words are spelt incorrectly – using a word that sounds the same but has a different meaning. Because the words exist, the spelling checker won't identify with them as wrong as it can't understand the context of sentences.

2 /aɪ hæv ə spelɪŋ ʃekə  
ɪt keɪm wɪθ maɪ piːsiː  
ɪt sɪks tə faɪnd fɔː maɪ rɪvjuː  
mɪsteɪks aɪ kænɒt siː/  
/aɪ straɪk ə kiː ən taɪp ə wɔːd  
ənd weɪt fɔːr ɪt tuː seɪ  
wɔːd əɪ æm rɒŋ ɔː raɪt  
ɪt ʃəʊz mi streɪtəweɪ/  
/əz suːn əz ə mɪsteɪk ɪz meɪd  
ɪt nəʊz bɪfɔː tuː lɒŋ  
ənd aɪ kæn put ðiː ərə raɪt  
ɪts ɪn nəʊ weɪ evə rɒŋ/  
/aɪ hæv rən ðɪs pəʊəm ðruːwɪt  
aɪ æm ʃɔː ʃɔː plɪːzd tə nəʊ  
ɪts letə pɜːfekt ɪn ɪts weɪ  
maɪ ʃekə təʊld mi səʊ/

- 3 It came with my PC
- It seeks to find for my review
- Mistakes I cannot see
- I strike a key and type a word
- And wait for it to say
- Whether I am wrong or right
- It shows me straightaway
- As soon as a mistake is made
- It knows before too long
- And I can put the error right
- It's in no way ever wrong
- I have run this poem through it
- I am sure you're pleased to know
- It's letter-perfect in its way
- My checker told me so.

4 aloud, allowed  
groan, grown  
morning, mourning  
jeans, genes  
mussels, muscles  
berry, bury

5 1 mourning 4 groan  
2 genes 5 allowed  
3 muscles 6 bury

## Unit 12

- 1 1 as a result 11 while  
2 until 12 when  
3 through 13 Whereas  
4 owing to 14 While  
5 as well as 15 otherwise  
6 As a 16 in order to  
consequence 17 once  
7 all the same, 18 In the end  
8 so 19 though  
9 Even though 20 Nevertheless,  
10 as soon as
- 2 2 Despite having gone / going bankrupt in his 30s, Jeff now runs a very successful online business. / Jeff now runs a very successful online business, despite having gone / going bankrupt in his 30s.
- 3 I tend to be a bit lazy, whereas my sister Monika is always busy – she can't keep still for a minute. / Whereas I tend to be a bit lazy, my sister Monika is always busy – she can't keep still for a minute.
- 4 My grandfather can describe in great detail events that took place 50 years ago. However he often can't remember what he had for breakfast.
- 5 Sue is not very well off. Even so, she gives generously to various charities.
- 6 Much as I admire her, I find her difficult to get on with.
- 7 While I don't agree with some of his policies, I think he'd make a good Prime Minister.
- 8 Buying that house should be a good investment. On the other hand, Katie has to remember that the housing market could collapse.
- 9 Although I don't believe in miracles, his recovery seems to defy medical explanation. / I don't believe in miracles, although his recovery does seem to defy medical explanation.
- 10 It's a bit of a wrench for Gio and Liv to leave Oxford. All the same, they are looking forward to living in Barbados. / They are looking forward to leaving Oxford all same.
- 3 1 X I'm frozen. I've been working outside.

- 2 X The experiment went wrong and had to be terminated.
- 3 ✓
- 4 ✓
- 5 X I know the traffic noise makes it difficult, but please try to pay attention.
- 6 X We didn't need to rush to get to the airport, so we took the scenic route.
- 7 X It may / might not be warm and sunny tomorrow, so bring something warm to wear.
- 8 ✓
- 9 X I'm not enjoying this work trip much. Then again, I wasn't expecting to.
- 10 X Rarely have I encountered such rude staff in a four-star hotel.
- 11 ✓
- 12 X We'd rather you hadn't brought Jo along last night.
- 13 ✓
- 14 X As I was walking over the bridge, my camera fell in the river.
- 15 X You should go to Ganema beach when you visit Serifos. Mind you, it's not easy to find!
- 16 ✓
- 17 ✓
- 18 X It has been alleged that he took money in return for political favours. / He is alleged to have taken money in return for political favours.
- 19 X I'm about to get really angry!
- 20 ✓

4 1 1 by 2 with 3 out of 4 in 5 at

- 2 1 hindsight, turn  
2 chance, design  
3 ease, place  
4 advance, a disadvantage  
5 time, guess  
6 tears, common  
7 sight, luck  
8 reach
- 5 1 bitten 6 dawned  
2 foggiest 7 booming  
3 overshadowed 8 slaving  
4 sparked 9 tightened  
5 flooded 10 keeping
- 6 1 clockwork 7 horse  
2 book 8 light, log  
3 wildfire 9 a house on fire  
4 glove 10 hot cakes  
5 leaf 11 sore thumb  
6 a sieve 12 charm
- 7 1 houses 6 gold  
2 sheet 7 old boots  
3 bone 8 clockwork  
4 mustard 9 mud  
5 pancake 10 feather

8 1 1 c 2 b 3 a

2 1 F Men often wear similar kinds of clothes in their 40s to the ones they wore in their 20s, but in a larger size, so they are not actually the same clothes.

2 T

3 T

4 T

5 F In their 30s, people re-evaluate their career options.

6 F They make jokes if men attempt to look after their appearance after the age of 40.

7 T

8 F Nowadays, leading an active and healthy lifestyle is common at the age of the typical midlife crisis.

3 1 e 2 l 3 k 4 h 5 j 6 i 7 d  
8 a 9 g 10 b 11 c 12 f

9 3 We think of our current era /r/ as the /j/ apex of outstanding advance in science, so /w/ it may come as a surprise that the decade in which the most revolutionary /j/ and far-reaching advances occurred was over fifty years ago – the 1960s. Between 1960 /j/ and 1970, astronomers understood that the universe had a beginning, when it exploded in the Big Bang, so /w/ it was also true /w/ it could end one day. In the same decade, geologists found evidence for the theory /j/ of continental drift, which explained how the /j/ Earth's landmasses were shaped as they moved around and crashed into /w/ each other. Finally, /j/ it was in 1962 that a communications satellite was first launched into space. Before Telstar, images for TV had to be sent by plane across the globe before viewers could see them. The /j/ arrival of satellite communication changed everything. By 1963, viewers around the world could watch in horror the /j/ assassination of President Kennedy, almost as it happened, and the /j/ era /r/ of the global village had arrived.

10 3 1 b 2 c 3 b

The last line is slightly irregular as we don't usually stress the 'ence' in 'difference'.

4 1 tricky

2 Don't follow everyone else – be brave enough to take your own direction in life.

3 How wonderful things might have been, if only ...

4 He finally made the decision to enlist as a soldier in WW1 (in 1916).

# Phonetic symbols

Consonants			
1	/p/	as in	<b>pen</b> /pen/
2	/b/	as in	<b>big</b> /bɪg/
3	/t/	as in	<b>tea</b> /ti:/
4	/d/	as in	<b>do</b> /du:/
5	/k/	as in	<b>cat</b> /kæt/
6	/g/	as in	<b>go</b> /gəʊ/
7	/f/	as in	<b>four</b> /fɔ:/
8	/v/	as in	<b>very</b> /'veri/
9	/s/	as in	<b>son</b> /sʌn/
10	/z/	as in	<b>zoo</b> /zu:/
11	/l/	as in	<b>live</b> /lɪv/
12	/m/	as in	<b>my</b> /maɪ/
13	/n/	as in	<b>near</b> /nɪə/
14	/h/	as in	<b>happy</b> /'hæpi/
15	/r/	as in	<b>red</b> /red/
16	/j/	as in	<b>yes</b> /jes/
17	/w/	as in	<b>want</b> /wɒnt/
18	/θ/	as in	<b>thanks</b> /θæŋks/
19	/ð/	as in	<b>the</b> /ðə/
20	/ʃ/	as in	<b>she</b> /ʃi:/
21	/ʒ/	as in	<b>television</b> /'telɪvɪʒn/
22	/tʃ/	as in	<b>child</b> /tʃaɪld/
23	/dʒ/	as in	<b>German</b> /'dʒɜ:mən/
24	/ŋ/	as in	<b>English</b> /'ɪŋɡlɪʃ/

Vowels			
25	/i:/	as in	<b>see</b> /si:/
26	/ɪ/	as in	<b>his</b> /hɪz/
27	/ɪ/	as in	<b>twenty</b> /'twenti/
28	/e/	as in	<b>ten</b> /ten/
29	/æ/	as in	<b>stamp</b> /stæmp/
30	/ɑ:/	as in	<b>father</b> /'fɑ:ðə/
31	/ɒ/	as in	<b>hot</b> /hɒt/
32	/ɔ:/	as in	<b>morning</b> /'mɔ:nɪŋ/
33	/ʊ/	as in	<b>football</b> /'fʊtbɔ:l/
34	/u:/	as in	<b>you</b> /ju:/
35	/ʌ/	as in	<b>sun</b> /sʌn/
36	/ɜ:/	as in	<b>learn</b> /lɜ:n/
37	/ə/	as in	<b>letter</b> /'letə/

Diphthongs (two vowels together)			
38	/eɪ/	as in	<b>name</b> /neɪm/
39	/əʊ/	as in	<b>no</b> /nəʊ/
40	/aɪ/	as in	<b>my</b> /maɪ/
41	/aʊ/	as in	<b>how</b> /haʊ/
42	/ɔɪ/	as in	<b>boy</b> /bɔɪ/
43	/ɪə/	as in	<b>hear</b> /hɪə/
44	/eə/	as in	<b>where</b> /weə/
45	/ʊə/	as in	<b>tour</b> /tʊə/

# Notes

# Notes

# Notes

# Notes

Great Clarendon Street, Oxford, OX2 6DP,  
United Kingdom

Oxford University Press is a department of the  
University of Oxford. It furthers the University's  
objective of excellence in research, scholarship,  
and education by publishing worldwide. Oxford  
is a registered trade mark of Oxford University  
Press in the UK and in certain other countries

© Oxford University Press 2015

The moral rights of the author have been asserted  
eBook Edition

ISBN: 978 0 19 471174 6

eBook

ISBN: 978 0 19 471177 7

eBook (In-App)

First published in 2015

### No copying or file sharing

This digital publication is protected by international  
copyright laws. No part of this digital publication  
may be reproduced, modified, adapted, stored in a  
retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by  
any means, to any other person or company without  
the prior permission in writing of Oxford University  
Press, or as expressly permitted by law. Enquiries  
concerning reproduction outside the scope of the  
above should be sent to the ELT Rights Department,  
Oxford University Press, at the address above

You must not modify, adapt, copy, store, transfer  
or circulate the contents of this publication under  
any other branding or as part of any other product.  
You may not print out material for any commercial  
purpose or resale

Any websites referred to in this publication are in the  
public domain and their addresses are provided by  
Oxford University Press for information only. Oxford  
University Press disclaims all and any responsibility  
for the content of such websites

### ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The authors and publisher are grateful to those who have  
given permission to reproduce the following extracts and  
adaptations of copyright material: pp.12–13 Extracts  
from “On writing: authors reveal the secrets of their  
craft” by Various Authors, *The Guardian*, 26 March  
2011. Copyright Guardian News & Media Ltd 2011.  
Reproduced by permission. p.14 “Interview with  
Simon Winchester” from *New Headway: Advanced:  
Workbook* by Liz Soars and John Soars Oxford  
University Press, 2003. Reproduced by permission.  
pp.20–21 Extract from “Uruguay’s president José  
Mujica: no palace, no motorcade, no frills” by  
Jonathan Watts, *www.theguardian.com*, 13 December  
2013. Copyright Guardian News & Media Ltd 2013.  
Reproduced by permission. p.23 “Interview with Patel  
brothers” from *New Headway: Advanced: Workbook* by  
Liz Soars and John Soars Oxford University Press,  
2003. Reproduced by permission. p.38 “Martine and  
Jaap” from *New Headway: Advanced: Workbook*  
by Liz Soars and John Soars Oxford University  
Press, 2003. Reproduced by permission. pp.36–37  
Extract from *Committed: A Skeptic Makes Peace With  
Marriage* by Elizabeth Gilbert, copyright © 2010 by  
Elizabeth Gilbert. Used by permission of The Wylie  
Agency (UK) Limited and Viking Books, an imprint  
of Penguin Publishing Group, a division of Penguin  
Random House LLC. p.55 Extract from “He, she or  
ze: pronouns really are personal now” by Alexandra  
Fread, *The Times*, 29 August 2014. Reproduced by  
permission of News Syndication. pp.56–57 Extract  
from “Meet the first female footballers (who kicked  
up quite a fuss in their knickerbockers)” by David  
Wilkes, *Mail Online*, 9 December 2011. Reproduced  
by permission of Solo Syndication. pp.70–71 Extract  
from “Experience: I am a 91-year-old bodybuilder” by  
Charles Eugster, *The Guardian*, 2 April 2011. Copyright

Guardian News & Media Ltd 2011. Reproduced by  
permission. p.88 “The Road Not Taken” from the  
book *The Poetry of Robert Frost* edited by Edward  
Connery Lathem, published by Jonathan Cape.  
Copyright © 1916, 1969 by Henry Holt and Company,  
copyright © 1944 by Robert Frost. Reprinted by  
permission of The Random House Group Limited and  
Henry Holt and Company, LLC. All rights reserved.

Sources: p.4 *www.brainyquote.com*, p.4 “The Art  
of Donald McGill” by George Orwell, *Horizon*,  
1941. p.7 “6 Shocking Ways Robots Are Already  
Becoming Human” by Eric A., Karl Smallwood  
and Dennis Hong, *www.cracked.com*, 24 June  
2011. p.10 *http://alexandrallynwood.com*, p.17  
“Hints on Pronunciation for visiting Foreigners”  
by T. S. Watt, *The Manchester Guardian*, 21st June  
1954. p.18 *www.goodreads.com/quotes*, p.19  
*www.empowerorphans.org*, p.23 “Vijay Patel:  
the ‘Bollygarch’ with the right prescription for  
profits in big pharma” by Louise Armitstead,  
*www.telegraph.co.uk*, 13 April 2014. pp.28–29  
“How does he do it? He walks on water, strolls  
down skyscrapers and now magician Dynamo  
has a novel way of catching a bus” by Guy Adams,  
*www.dailymail.co.uk*, 24 June 2013. pp.28–29  
“‘Mentally, I’ve always been different from most  
people’: Why millions have fallen under Dynamo’s  
spell” by Jon Wilde, *www.dailymail.co.uk*, 30  
June 2012. p.43 “Back to the Land” by P Adkins &  
J Moncrieff, pp.43–44 “The Women’s Land Army: We  
Will Never Forget” by Grace Wallace, *www.bbc.co.uk*,  
17 November 2004. p.61 “Lakeland teenager with  
rare cancer saying goodbye through song” by  
Mary Divine, *www.twincities.com*, 8th December  
2012. pp.64–65 “Mick Jagger: ‘My parents didn’t  
want me to be in show business’” by John Hiscock,  
*www.telegraph.co.uk*, 31 July 2014. pp.64–65 *The  
Rolling Stones: A Musical Biography* by Murry R. Nelson  
(Greenwood Press, 2010). p.68 *This Book Has No Title*  
by Jarod Kintz. p.68 *http://laceysturmquotes.tumblr.  
com*, p.78 “Spielberg in the Twilight Zone” by Lisa  
Kennedy, *www.wired.com*. p.79 “Raspberry Pi’s Eben  
Upton: A self-employed world”, *www.bbc.co.uk*,  
3 April 2013. p.81 “Spell Chequer” by Martha  
Snow, *www.davidpbrown.co.uk*. p.82 *The Unfinished  
Country* by Max Lerner (Weidenfeld & Nicolson,  
1959). p.82 “Trees saved my life” by Rob McBride,  
*http://visitwoods.org.uk*. p.82 “Why we need to green  
the concrete jungles” by Rob Edwards, *Sunday Herald*,  
11 July 2010. p.86 “Are you running a marathon,  
getting a facelift or a tattoo? You’re probably in the  
grip of a male mid-life crisis...” by Deni Kirkova,  
*www.dailymail.co.uk*, 30 May 2014.

Although every effort has been made to trace and contact  
copyright holders before publication, this has not been  
possible in some cases. We apologize for any apparent  
infringement of copyright and if notified, the publisher will  
be pleased to rectify any errors or omissions at the earliest  
opportunity.

Art editing by: Suzanne Williams/Pictureresearch.co.uk

Illustrations by: Ian Baker pp.6, 24, 32, 34, 47, 51,  
67, 74, 76, 80; Fausto Bianchi/Beehive Illustration  
pp.16, 59; Robin Boyden/Pickled Ink Ltd p.72; Gill  
Burton pp.31, 35, 39, 49, 53, 71, 84; Caroline Church/  
Illustration Ltd p.17; Tom Croft p.11; Mark Duffin  
p.38; Melvyn Evans p.5; Patrick Rosche/Illustration  
Ltd p.14; Martin Sanders p.55; Azélie Williams p.77

We would also like to thank the following for permission  
to reproduce the following photographs: Alamy  
pp.13 (Wendy Cope/Geraint Lewis), 14 (dpa picture  
alliance), 15 (Raga Jose Fuste/Prisma Bildagentur  
AG), 30 (Mar Photographics), 33 (Jan Wlodarczyk),  
48 (homeless man/Fotomaton), 58 (truck/Oleksiy  
Maksymenko), (doll/Elly Godfroy), 63 (Roger  
Cracknell 01/classic), 75 (Trevor Collens), 87 (couple/  
Malcolm McDougall), 89 (Robert Frost/Keystone  
Pictures USA); By kind permission of Professor

Ross King, photos © Aberystwyth University  
p.7 (Adam robot scientist); AxiomPhotographic.com  
p.48 (high rise flats) © Timothy Allen); Camera Press,  
London p.13 (Ian Rankin/Clara Molden/Telegraph),  
13 (Penelope Lively/Clara Molden), 13 (Michael  
Holroyd/Eamonn McCabe), 29 (bus), 64; Cartoonstock  
pp.42 (Ron Morgan), 81 (Roy Delgado); The Library  
of Congress p.77 (Josephine Daskam Bacon); Corbis  
pp.9 (Wavebreak Media Ltd.), 12 (Beryl Bainbridge/  
Penny Tweedie/Documentary Value), 20 (wearing hat/  
Sergio Goya/dpa), (car/Ivan Franco/epa), 21 (UN/Justin  
Lane/epa), 37 (terraces/Tim Clayton), (train/Bertrand  
Rieger/Hemis); Jeff Dunn Photography Inc. p.61 (by  
kind permission of the Zobiech family); Cover design  
from *The Ghost of Thomas Kempe* by Penelope Lively.  
Cover illustration by Oliver Burston. Cover design  
© 2006 Egmont UK Ltd. Published by Egmont UK Ltd  
London and used with permission. p.13; Cover design  
from *War Horse* by Michael Morpurgo. Cover design  
copyright © Egmont UK Ltd. Published by Egmont  
UK Ltd and used with permission p.13; Published by  
Faber and Faber Ltd. *Family Values* by Wendy Cope  
and *Innocent Blood* by p.D. James p.13; Getty Images  
pp.7 (torso/Colin Anderson), 8 (Thanasis Zovoilis),  
10 (Cultura RM/Jason Butcher), 11 (shed/Peter Cade),  
13 (Michael Morpurgo/Tim Whitby), (PD James/  
Tim Whitby/WireImage), 21 (walking dog/Dante  
Fernandez/LatinContent), (crowds/Claudio Reyes/  
AFP), 23 (Tim p. Whitby), 27 (nullplus), 36 (Elizabeth  
Gilbert with cup/Jeremy Liebman/Contour by Getty  
Images), 37 (street/Lonely Planet Images), 40 (Fine  
Art Images/Heritage Images), 43 (harvesting/Ministry  
of Information Photo Division Photographer/IWM  
via Getty Images), 65 (Rolling Stones 1963 posed  
portrait/Terry O’Neill), (Rolling Stones performing  
in studio 1965/David Farrell), (Mick Jagger 2014/  
Ragnar Singsaas/WireImage), 83 (Steve Ogle),  
87 (car/Juan Silva); Photograph from COMMITTED  
by Elizabeth Gilbert. Copyright © 2010, Elizabeth  
Gilbert, used by permission of The Wylie Agency  
(UK) Limited p.36 (Elizabeth and Felipe posing with  
woman); By permission of Neha Gupta/Empower  
Orphans p.19; © Imperial War Museums (Art.IWM  
PST 16609)/Join the Women’s Land Army p.43; The  
Kobal Collection – The Picture Desk p.46 (poster/  
Fast and Furious 6/Universal 2013); Published by  
Little, Brown Book Group Ltd, *The Dressmaker* by  
Beryl Bainbridge p.13; Mary Evans Picture Library  
p.57 (Nellie Hudson/Illustrated London News Ltd);  
Ron McBride, *TreeHunter.co.uk* & @thetreehunter  
Mr McBride started volunteering for the Woodland  
Trust (a conservation charity) finding & recording  
many veteran & ancient trees for its Ancient Tree  
Hunt (ATH) project p.82; By permission of The Orion  
Publishing Group, London; *Exit Music* by Ian Rankin,  
ISBN 978-0752893518 p.13; By kind permission of The  
Painting Fool, *www.thepaintingfool.com* p.7; Press  
Association Images pp.28 (with cards/Suzan/EMPICS  
Entertainment), 69 (Mathilde Dusol/AP), 69 (Bas  
Czerwinski/AP); Published by The Random House  
Group Limited, Lytton Strachey written by Michael  
Holroyd. Photograph © National Portrait Gallery  
Used by arrangement with The Random House Group  
Limited p.13; Rex Features pp.28 (two magicians/The  
Incredible Burt Wonderstone – 2013/Moviestore),  
29 (walking on water), 68 (Niviere/Chamussy/  
SIPA), 88 (Underwood Archives/UiG); Shutterstock  
pp.25 (Gts), 26 (face/Valua Vitaly), (cream/Pakawat  
Suwannaket), 28 (with rabbit/Ljupco Smokovski),  
38 (pot/Lukas Pobuda), 46 (cinema/BlueSkyImage),  
48 (Katrien1), 51 (Sergey Furtaev), 52 (Federico  
Marsicano), 62 (posztos), 77 (globe/baldyrgan),  
78 (nopporn), 85 (jes2u.photo), 87 (woman/  
michaeljung), 89 (woods/Zack C); Smithsonian  
Institution Archives p.77 (John Elfreth Watkins/  
Image No. MAH-57818); Superstock pp.38 (mountains/  
Hemis.fr), 66 (Westend61); SWNS pp.56, 57 (Helen  
Mathews), 70, 71; Topfoto.co.uk p.44 (John Topham)